

# Index

## ABANDONED OFFERINGS

Private placement, Rule 155, **5:67**

## ACCELERATED FILING DEADLINES

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:113, 6:117**

## ACCESS

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:115**

## ACCESS EQUALS DELIVERY

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:95**

## ACCOMMODATIONS

See also **Accounting and Financial Matters** (this index)

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:87**

Tender and exchange offers

Generally, **11:162 to 11:164**

Equal treatment of target securityholders, **11:163**

Exemptive and no-action relief from U.S. requirements, **11:163, 11:164**

Extension of offer after significant change, **11:164**

Minimum duration of offer, **11:164**

Notice of extensions, **11:164**

Prompt payment or return of tendered securities, **11:164**

Subsequent offering periods, **11:163**

Withdrawal rights, **11:163**

## ACCOUNTANT'S REPORT

Auditing, **7:43**

## ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL MATTERS

Generally, **7:1 et seq.**

See also **Interim Reports and Financial Statements; Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

Accommodation

Amortization period of goodwill, below

Financial statement requirements after a reverse acquisition, **7:178**

Foreign targets in cross-border business combinations, **7:179**

Method of accounting for business combinations, **7:168**

Related matters, **7:170**

Accountant's report, **7:43**

Accounting method for business combinations, **7:163, 7:168**

Acquisition method, **7:172**

Age of financial statements, **7:120**

## ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL MATTERS

### —Cont'd

Annual reports, disclosure in, **7:110**

Approved enterprise zones, Israel, **7:312**

Article 11 of Regulation S-X, pro forma information that departs from, **7:181**

Asia, generally, **7:317 to 7:320**

Attestation reports on management's assessment of internal control over financing reporting, **7:43**

Audit committees

Disclosures, **7:108 to 7:110**

Nasdaq listing standards for audit committees, **7:107**

NYSE listing standards for audit committees, **7:107**

Review of draft of MD&A, **7:267**

Auditing

See also **Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

Accountant's report, **7:43**

Background, **7:4**

Contribution-in-kind reports, **7:41**

Derivatives, fair values, **7:281**

Disclosure of illegal acts, **7:45**

Fairness opinions, **7:41**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, **7:106**

GAAS (Generally Accepted Auditing Standards), below in this heading

General standards, **7:36**

Illegal acts, disclosure of, **7:45**

Indemnification, **7:40**

Independence, **7:38**

Other issues, **7:105 et seq.**

Panel on audit effectiveness, Report and Recommendation, **7:111**

Receivables, confirmation of, **7:42**

Report, accountant's report, **7:43**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

SEC requirements, **7:10**

Standards, generally, **7:1 et seq.**

Technical training and proficiency, **7:37**

Audit report, **7:268**

Banking and insurance companies, disclosure, **7:284**

Brazil inflationary status, **7:304**

Brazil inflation indices, **7:303**

Business combinations, **7:162 to 7:179**

Canada

Flow through shares, **7:295**

Reporting currency changes in, **7:136**

## ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL MATTERS —Cont'd

Changes in reporting currency, presentation of comparative periods in Euros, **7:139**  
 Chile profit distributions, **7:306**  
 Chile translation of foreign subsidiaries, **7:305**  
 Columbia, price level adjusting, **7:307**  
 Comprehensive income, ASC 220, **7:125**  
 Consistency with other public statements, **7:262**  
 Consolidation and proportionate consolidation, **7:158 to 7:160**  
   Generally, **7:152 to 7:160**  
   Accommodation in item 17 and 18 for proportionate consolidation of investments in joint ventures, **7:154**  
   Accounting, consolidation of, **7:160**  
   Equity method, potential voting rights and allocation of interests, **7:161**  
   Equity method in U.S. GAAP, consolidated businesses that would be accounted for under, **7:156**  
   Foreign subsidiaries, Mexico, **7:299**  
   Policies, SPEs, **7:157**  
   Policy disclosures, **7:153**  
   Proportionate consolidation in U.S. GAAP financial statements, **7:155**  
 Contractual obligations and commercial commitments, **7:202**  
 Contribution-in-kind reports, **7:41**  
 Country specific issues  
   Generally, **7:294 to 7:320**  
   Approved enterprise zones, Israel, **7:312**  
   Asia, generally, **7:317 to 7:320**  
   Brazil inflationary status, **7:304**  
   Brazil inflation indices, **7:303**  
   Canada, flow through shares, **7:295**  
   Chile profit distributions, **7:306**  
   Chile translation of foreign subsidiaries, **7:305**  
   Columbia, price level adjusting, **7:307**  
   Consolidation of foreign subsidiaries, Mexico, **7:299**  
   Deferred profit sharing, Mexico, **7:298**  
   Devaluation method, Israel, **7:315**  
   Fixed assets of non-Mexican origin, **7:300**  
   Government grants, Israel, **7:314**  
   Inflationary status, Mexico, **7:301**  
   Israel, **7:311 to 7:316**  
   Item 18 disclosures, United Kingdom, **7:310**  
   Latin America, capital transactions-earnings per share, **7:308**  
   Latin America, generally, **7:302**  
   Mexico, **7:296 to 7:301**  
   Pension plans, Israel, **7:313**  
   Pensions, Mexico, **7:297**  
   PRC, consolidation of joint ventures, **7:318**

## ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL MATTERS —Cont'd

Country specific issues—Cont'd  
   PRC, fixed asset revaluation under IAS 16, **7:319**  
   Price indexed tax systems, Israel, **7:316**  
   South America, generally, **7:302 to 7:307**  
   Taiwan, stock bonuses, **7:320**  
   United Kingdom, **7:309, 7:310**  
 Cross-border business combinations  
   Accommodation, foreign targets, **7:179**  
   Age of pro forma information, **7:182**  
 Currency. Financial statements, below in this heading  
 Deferred profit sharing, Mexico, **7:298**  
 Derivative instruments and hedging activities, **7:274**  
 Derivative instruments and hedging activities, FAS 133, **7:124**  
 Derivatives  
   Generally, **7:271 to 7:281**  
   Accounting for derivative instruments and hedging activities, **7:274**  
   Auditing fair values and, **7:281**  
   Documentation, **7:277 to 7:280**  
   Financial statement presentation and disclosure, **7:280**  
   Hedged forecasted transaction, **7:278**  
   Hedge effectiveness, assessing, **7:279**  
   SEC disclosure requirements, **7:272, 7:273**  
   Summary, **7:274**  
   U.K. GAAP and market risk disclosures, **7:273**  
 Devaluation method, Israel, **7:315**  
 Disclosure  
   Audit committees, **7:108 to 7:110**  
   Auditing, **7:45**  
   Banking and insurance companies, **7:284**  
   Derivatives, **7:280**  
   Euro, **7:140**  
   MD&A, **7:241, 7:249**  
   Mining reserves and depletion, **7:286**  
   New accounting rules, **7:186**  
   Oil and gas full cost ceiling test, **7:285**  
   Revenue recognition, **7:130**  
   Specialized industries, **7:283 to 7:286**  
   United Kingdom, Item 18 disclosures, **7:310**  
 Disclosure requirements, **7:177**  
 Discrete contributions to results, discussion of, **7:263**  
 Dividend distribution policies, **7:282**  
 Documentation, **7:277 to 7:280**  
 Environmental disclosures, **7:249**  
 Euros, Reporting issues concerning, **7:138, 7:139**  
 Expert, financial. See **Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)  
 Export sales, **7:282**

## ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL MATTERS —Cont'd

- Fairness opinions, **7:41**
- Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB)** (this index)
- Financial data, selected, **7:189**
- Financial disclosure. **Listing Requirements** (this index)
- Financial information
  - Generally, **7:112 et seq.**
  - See also Financial statements, below in this heading
  - Investment advisers, antifraud provisions of regulation, **14:48**
  - Management's discussion and analysis of financial condition and results of operations (MD&A). **Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)
- Financial notice. **Listing Requirements** (this index)
- Financial statements
  - Generally, **7:113 et seq.**
  - Accommodation for certain offerings, **7:120**
  - Accounting for associates, IAS 28, **7:151**
  - Acquired businesses, **7:149**
  - Age of financial statements, **7:117, 7:120**
  - Annual, **7:114 to 7:117, 7:120**
  - Article 11 of Regulation S-X, pro forma information that departs from, **7:181**
  - Business combinations, **7:171**
    - Generally, **7:162 to 7:179**
  - Accommodation
    - Amortization period of goodwill and negative goodwill, **7:169**
    - Financial statement requirements after a reverse acquisition, **7:178**
    - Foreign targets in cross-border business combinations, **7:179**
    - Method of accounting for business combinations, **7:168**
  - Accounting for bargain purchases, **7:175**
  - Accounting method for, **7:163**
  - Acquisition method, **7:172**
  - Disclosure requirements, **7:177**
  - Goodwill and other intangible assets under U.S. GAAP, accounting for, ASC 350, **7:164**
  - Goodwill lives, **7:174**
  - Impairment of goodwill, **7:176**
  - Recognition and measurement principles, **7:173**
  - Reconciliation accommodations, **7:167**
  - Reconciliation disclosures when pervasive differences between U.S. GAAP and home country GAAP, **7:166**
  - Rule 3-05, pooling of interests under home country GAAP, **7:165**

## ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL MATTERS —Cont'd

- Financial statements—Cont'd
  - Changes since the date of, **7:282**
  - Changing basis of presentation, **7:187, 7:188**
  - Comprehensive income, ASC 220, **7:125**
  - Consolidation and proportionate consolidation, **7:158 to 7:160**
    - Generally, **7:152 to 7:160**
    - Accommodation in item 17 and 18 for proportionate consolidation of investments in joint ventures, **7:154**
  - Accounting, consolidation of, **7:160**
  - Equity method, potential voting rights and allocation of interests, **7:161**
  - Equity method in U.S. GAAP, consolidated businesses that would be accounted for under, **7:156**
  - Policies, SPEs, **7:157**
  - Policy disclosures, **7:153**
  - Proportionate consolidation in U.S. GAAP financial statements, **7:155**
- Continuous offerings, **7:120**
- Cross border business combination, age of pro forma information in, **7:182**
- Currency
  - Generally, **7:131 to 7:147**
  - Changes in reporting currency, **7:134 to 7:137**
  - Convenience translations, **7:132**
  - Euros, reporting issues concerning, **7:138 to 7:140**
  - Highly inflationary economics, **7:141 to 7:147**
  - Measurement currency, **7:133**
  - Presentation of comparative periods in Euros, **7:139**
  - Reporting currency, generally, **7:131**
- Delayed offerings, **7:120**
- Derivative instruments and hedging activities, application of ASC 815 in initial filings, **7:124**
- Derivatives, presentation and disclosure, **7:280**
- Disclosure about new accounting rules, **7:186**
- Disclosures, **7:121 et seq.**
- Equity investees, **7:150, 7:151**
- Euros, Reporting issues concerning, **7:138, 7:139**
- FAS 52, determining whether economy is highly inflationary under, **7:146**
- GAAP, changing to for primary, **7:187**
- GAAP, see lines throughout this group
- GAAP pronouncements
  - Generally, **7:123 et seq.**
  - Comprehensive income, ASC 220, **7:125**

**ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL MATTERS****—Cont'd**

Financial statements—Cont'd

GAAP pronouncements—Cont'd

- Derivative instruments and hedging activities, application of ASC 815 in initial filings, **7:124**
- Segment and category of activity information, **7:126, 7:127**
- Stock compensation disclosures, ASP 718, **7:128**

Hyperinflationary economies, **7:141 to 7:147**

Inflationary economies, highly, **7:141 to 7:147**

Interim, **7:118**

More current information, **7:119**

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:28 et seq.**

Other, **7:148 to 7:184**

Periods covered and audit report, **7:116**

Price level adjusted

- Generally, **7:142 to 7:145**
- Cash flow statements, **7:145**
- Updating, **7:144**
- U.S. GAAP, **7:143**

Primary financial statement, changing basis of presentation, **7:188**

Pro forma financial statements, **7:183**

Pro forma information, **7:180 to 7:183**

Reconciliation, **7:122 et seq.**

Reporting currency. Currency, above this group

Reporting in U.S. dollars, **7:147**

Required, **7:115**

Revenue recognition, **7:130**

Schedules to, **7:185**

Segment and category of activity information, **7:126, 7:127**

Sovereigns, **4:14**

Stock compensation disclosures, ASC 718, **7:128**

Subsidiary issuers and guarantors, **7:184**

Financings, **9:14 to 9:18**

Fixed assets of non-Mexican origin, **7:300**

Fixed asset valuations, **7:290**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, **7:106**

Form 20-F, Item 9, **7:191 to 7:258**

Fortune 500 Summary (2003). Operating and financial review prospects (MD&A), below in this heading

GAAP. Financial statements, above in this heading

GAAS (Generally accepted auditing standards)

- Generally, **7:34 to 7:45**
- Accountant's reports and attestation reports on management's assessment of internal control over financing reporting, **7:43**

**ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL MATTERS****—Cont'd**

GAAS (Generally accepted auditing standards)

- Cont'd
- Audit requirements, generally, **7:34 to 7:45**
- Disclosure of illegal acts by auditor, **7:45**
- Inventory observation, **7:42**
- Problems and solutions, **7:44**
- Receivables, confirmation of, **7:42**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **7:39**
- SEC auditor independent requirements, **7:38 to 7:41**
- Technical training proficiency, **7:37**

Goodwill

- Generally, **7:174**
- Bargain purchases, accounting for, **7:175**
- Impairment of, **7:176**
- Intangible assets under U.S. GAAP, accounting for, ASC 350, **7:164**

Government grants, Israel, **7:314**

Hedged forecasted transaction, **7:278**

Hedge effectiveness, assessing, **7:279**

Hedging, derivative instruments and hedging activities, application of ASC 815 in initial filings, **7:124**

Illegal acts, disclosure of, **7:45**

Impairment charges, **7:245**

Indemnification, **7:40**

Inflationary status, Mexico, **7:301**

Information statement, disclosure in, **7:109**

Information systems, Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:73**

Interim MD&A, **7:270**

Interim period reporting, **7:234**

Inventory, observation of, **7:42**

Israel, **7:311 to 7:316**

Issuances of government-owned shares to employees, **7:292**

Latin America, capital transactions-earnings per share, **7:308**

Latin America, generally, **7:302**

Legal and arbitration proceedings, **7:282**

Liquidity and capital resources, generally, **7:194 et seq.**

Literacy, financial, Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:110, 3:116**

Management's discussion and analysis (MD&A)

- Generally, **7:190 to 7:270**
- Additional general recommendations for preparing MD&A, **7:259 to 7:270**
- Analysis, focus on, **7:258**
- Audit committee review of draft MD&A, **7:267**
- Audit report, **7:268**
- Consistency with other public statements, **7:262**

## ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL MATTERS

### —Cont'd

Management's discussion and analysis (MD&A)  
 —Cont'd  
 Contents and focus of MD&A, **7:254 to 7:258**  
 Contractual obligations and commercial commitments, **7:202**  
 Critical accounting policy disclosure, **7:241**  
 Discrete contributions to results, discussion of, **7:263**  
 Discuss each operating segment, **7:260**  
 Draft MD&A, audit committee review of, **7:267**  
 Draft MD&A, increase working group discussion of, **7:266**  
 Environmental and product liability disclosures, **7:249**  
 Expansion of discussion beyond GAAP, **7:261**  
 Focus of MD&A, **7:254 to 7:258**  
 Fortune 500 Summary (2003), generally, **7:239 to 7:249**  
 Impairment charges, **7:245**  
 Increased amounts of information available to issuers, effect of, **7:252**  
 Interim MD&A, **7:270**  
 Interim period reporting, **7:234**  
 Key indicators of financial condition and operating performance, focus on, **7:255**  
 Liquidity and capital resources, generally  
   Generally, **7:194 to 7:201**  
   Cash management, **7:201**  
   Cash requirements, **7:196**  
   Debt instruments, guarantees and related covenants, **7:200**  
   Financing, **7:199**  
   MD&A Release (1989), **7:194**  
   MD&A Release (2002), **7:194**  
   MD&A Release (2003), **7:195 to 7:201**  
   Operations, **7:198**  
   Sources and uses of cash, **7:197 to 7:199**  
 Material changes, **7:233**  
 Materiality, focus on, **7:256**  
 Material trends and uncertainties, focus on, **7:257**  
 Non-GAAP financial information, **7:242**  
 Off-balance sheet arrangements, **7:204**  
 Offsetting factors, discussing, **7:264**  
 Pension plans, **7:246**  
 Preliminary merger negotiations, **7:236**  
 Presentation of MD&A, **7:253**  
 Prospective information, **7:193**  
 Purpose of guidance, **7:250**  
 Release (2003), generally, **7:250 to 7:258**  
 Restructuring charges, **7:244**  
 Results of operations, **7:232**  
 Revenue recognition, **7:243**

## ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL MATTERS

### —Cont'd

Management's discussion and analysis (MD&A)  
 —Cont'd  
**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)  
 SEC 2003 guidance, amendments, **7:269**  
 SEC guidance under former item 9 of form 20-F, under current item 5 and related matters, generally, **7:191 to 7:258**  
 Securitized financial assets and off-balance sheet arrangements, **7:248**  
 Segment analysis, **7:235**  
 Segment reporting, **7:247**  
 Trading activities that include non-exchange traded contracts accounted for at fair value, **7:238**  
 Transactions with related and certain other parties, **7:237**  
 Mexico, **7:296 to 7:301**  
 Mining reserves and depletion, disclosure, **7:286**  
 Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:28 et seq.**  
 Nasdaq listing standards for audit committees, **7:107**  
 NYSE listing standards for audit committees, **7:107**  
 Observation of inventory and confirmation of receivables, **7:42**  
 Off-balance sheet arrangements, **7:204**  
 Offsetting factors, discussing, **7:264**  
 Oil and gas full cost ceiling test, disclosure, **7:285**  
 Oil and gas properties, **7:293**  
 Other financial information, export sales, legal and arbitration proceedings, dividend distribution policies and significant changes since the date of the financial statements, **7:282**  
 Other issues, **7:105 et seq.**  
 Panel on audit effectiveness, Report and Recommendation, **7:111**  
**Pension Plans** (this index)  
 Performance, **7:255**  
 Policy disclosures, **7:153**  
 PRC  
   Consolidation of joint ventures, **7:318**  
   Fixed asset revaluation under IAS 16, **7:319**  
 Predecessor financial statements, **7:288**  
 Preliminary merger negotiations, **7:236**  
 Price indexed tax systems, Israel, **7:316**  
 Price level adjusted financial statements  
   Generally, **7:142 to 7:145**  
   Cash flow statements, **7:145**  
   Updating, **7:144**  
   U.S. GAAP, **7:143**  
 Privitizations of government owned enterprise  
   Generally, **7:287 to 7:293**



**ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL MATTERS****—Cont'd**

Privatizations of government owned enterprise  
 —Cont'd  
 Fixed asset valuations, **7:290**  
 Issuances of government-owned shares to employees, **7:292**  
 Oil and gas properties, **7:293**  
 Predecessor financial statements, **7:288**  
 Restructuring activities, **7:291**  
 Selected financial data, **7:289**  
 Pro forma financial statements, **7:183**  
 Pro forma information, **7:180 to 7:183**  
 Prospective information, **7:193**  
 Proxy, disclosure in, **7:109**  
 Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB). **Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)  
**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)  
 Public statements, **7:262**  
 Receivables, confirmation of, **7:42**  
 Recommendations, **7:111**  
 Reconciliation, **7:122 et seq., 7:166, 7:167**  
 Release (2003). Operating and financial review prospects (MD&A), above in this heading  
 Reports and reporting  
   Accountant's report, **7:43**  
   Annual reports, disclosure in, **7:110**  
   Financial reports and reporting, above in this heading  
   GAAS (Generally accepted auditing standards), **7:43**  
   Operating and financial review prospects (MD&A), **7:247, 7:268**  
   Panel of audit effectiveness, report and recommendations, **7:111**  
**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)  
 Restructuring activities, **7:244, 7:291**  
 Revenue recognition, **7:243**  
 Review of draft of MD&A by committee, **7:267**  
 Rule 3-05, **7:165**  
**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)  
 Schedules to financial statements, **7:185**  
 SEC disclosure requirements, **7:272, 7:273**  
 SEC guidance under former item 9 of form 20-F, under current item 5 and related matters, **7:191 to 7:258**  
 SEC requirements, **7:10**  
 Segment and category of activity information, **7:126, 7:127**  
 Selected financial data, **7:189**  
 Sophistication, financial, Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:116**  
 South America, generally, **7:302 to 7:307**  
 Specialized industries, disclosure, **7:283 to 7:286**

**ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL MATTERS****—Cont'd**

Standards, **7:2, 7:3**  
 Stock compensation disclosures, ASC 718, **7:128**  
 Subsidiary issuers and guarantors, **7:184**  
 Taiwan stock bonuses, **7:320**  
 Technical training and proficiency, **7:37**  
 Trading activities that include non-exchange traded contracts accounted for at fair value, **7:238**  
 Transactions with related and certain other parties, **7:237**  
 U.K. GAAP and market risk disclosures, **7:273**  
 United Kingdom, **7:309, 7:310**

**ACQUIRED BUSINESSES**

Financial statements, **7:149**

**ACQUISITIONS**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:85**  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:160**  
 Tender and exchange offers, compulsory acquisition, **11:155**

**ACTIVELY-TRADED REFERENCE SECURITIES**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 102, **10:117**

**ACTIVELY TRADED SECURITIES**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:89**

**ACTIVITY LEVEL IDENTIFICATION**

Large trader status, filing requirements, **11:53**

**ACTUARIAL SERVICES**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:75**

**ADDITIONAL SHARES**

Listing requirements, **3:25**

**ADJUSTMENTS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:99**

**ADMINISTRATIVE LAW**

North American Securities Administrators Association (NASAA), **15:3**  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:170, 7:80**

**ADRS**

See **American Depositary Receipts** (this index)

**ADVANCES**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:124**

**ADVERTISEMENTS**

Investment advisers, **14:45**  
 Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:119, 12:120**  
 Private placement, Internet offerings, **5:75**  
 Publicity. See **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

## ADVISORS

Business development company, **14:50**  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:96**

## ADVISORY AGREEMENTS

Investment advisers, **14:51**

## AFFILIATES

Beneficial ownership reporting, Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:27**  
Blue Sky Law, public offering of securities by foreign issuers, **15:26**  
**Broker-Dealers** (this index)  
Global offerings, **10:74**  
Investment advisers, **14:5**  
Resales, international tender offers and business combinations, **11:154**  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:83**  
Tender and exchange offers, **11:27**

## AFFIRMATIONS

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:193**

## AGENTS AND AGENCIES

Blue Sky Law, **15:6**  
Investment advisers, **14:49**  
Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:110**

## AGE OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Accounting and financial matters, **7:117, 7:120**

## AGGREGATE CONTRACTUAL COMMITMENTS

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## AGREEMENTS

See **Contracts and Agreements** (this index)

## ALLOCATION

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:97**

## AMENDMENTS

Exon-Florio Amendment, **11:185 to 11:187**  
Institutional investment manager reporting, Form 13F, **11:41**  
Investment advisers, **14:39**  
Large trading Form 13H filings with SEC, **11:58**  
Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:102**  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:135 to 3:137, 3:169, 6:49, 6:114**  
2004 amendments to listing requirements, New York Stock Exchange, **3:9 et seq.**

## AMERICAN DEPOSITARY RECEIPTS

Generally, **8:1 et seq., 8:25, 8:26**  
ADR to ADR trades, **8:11**  
Blue Sky Law, public offering of securities by foreign issuers, **15:16**

## AMERICAN DEPOSITARY RECEIPTS

### —Cont'd

Cancellation (withdrawal) to sales trades, **8:13**  
Capital, programs for raising, **8:26**  
Creation to purchase trades, **8:12**  
Definition, **8:2**  
Disclosure required by Form F-6, Securities Act registration, **8:21**  
Duplicate ADR facilities, **8:17**  
Eligibility for Form F-6, Securities Act registration, **8:20**  
Existing shares, programs for, **8:23 to 8:26**  
Foreign issuers  
Advantages for, **8:9**  
Public offerings by, **15:16 et seq.**  
Form F-6, Securities Act registration, **8:19 to 8:21**  
Historical background, **8:3**  
Listing, **5:52**  
New shares, programs for raising capital with (and listing after U.S. public offering of ADRs) (level three), **8:26**  
Private placement, **5:52**  
Program options  
Generally, **8:22 et seq.**  
Existing shares, programs for, **8:23 to 8:26**  
Listing, **8:25, 8:26**  
New shares, programs for raising capital with (and listing after U.S. public offering of ADRs) (level three), **8:26**  
Public offering, **8:25, 8:26**  
Sponsored (level one), **8:24**  
Public offering, **8:25, 8:26, 15:17**  
Registration, Securities Act registration, **8:18 to 8:21**  
Regulation S, **9:35**  
Securities Act registration, **8:18 to 8:21**  
Sponsored (level one), **8:24**  
Sponsored and unsponsored facilities, **8:14 to 8:17**  
Trades, **8:11 to 8:13**  
Trading process, **8:10**  
U.S. investors, advantages for  
Generally, **8:4 et seq.**  
Availability of information greater, **8:7**  
Fewer problems, **8:6**  
Transfer ease, **8:5**

## AMERICAN STOCK EXCHANGE

Generally, **3:2**  
Corporate governance, **3:15**  
Disclosure, financial, **3:14**  
Financial disclosure, **3:15**  
Financial notice, **3:15**  
Financial reporting, **3:15**  
Notice, financial, **3:15**

**AMERICAN STOCK EXCHANGE—Cont'd**

Reporting, financial, **3:15**

Requirements, generally, **3:9 et seq.**

**AMEX**

See **American Stock Exchange** (this index)

**ANALYSIS**

Management's discussion and analysis of financial condition and results of operations (MD&A). **Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**ANITRUST**

**Cross-Border Business Combination Rules** (this index)

**ANNOUNCEMENT**

Press announcements, **5:63**

**ANNUAL FEES**

Listing requirements, **3:26**

**ANNUAL FILING**

Large trader filing with SEC, **11:57**

**ANNUAL MEETINGS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act**, **3:147, 3:151**

**ANNUAL REPORTS**

Disclosure, **7:110**

Exchange Act, **6:23**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act**, **3:70, 3:104, 6:58, 6:109 to 6:111**

**ANTIFRAUD PROVISIONS AND REGULATION**

See also **Investment Advisers** (this index)

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

Global offerings, **10:66**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:104**

Self-tenders, issuer purchases of its own equity securities, **11:197**

**ANTIMANIPULATION RULES**

**Global Offerings** (this index)

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:78**

Private placement, **5:72**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:190**

**Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

**ANTI-MONEY LAUNDERING**

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

**APPLICATIONS**

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** of 2002, **7:13**

**APPRAISALS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** of 2002, **7:74**

**APPROVAL**

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**ARBITRAGE TRANSACTIONS**

Section 16(e) beneficial ownership reporting, **11:33**

**ASIA**

Accounting and financial matters, **7:317 to 7:320**

**ASSESSMENT**

Derivatives, **7:279**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** of 2002, **6:62**

**ASSET-BACKED SECURITIES**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:90**

**ASSIGNMENT OF ADVISORY AGREEMENTS**

Investment advisers, **14:51**

**ASSOCIATES**

IAS 28, accounting and financial matters, **7:151**

**ASSUMPTIONS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** of 2002, **7:219**

**ATTEMPTS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** of 2002, **6:185**

**ATTESTATION REPORTS**

Accounting and financial matters, **7:43**

**ATTESTATIONS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** of 2002, **6:62**

**AT-THE-MARKET OFFERINGS**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:86**

**ATTORNEYS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**ATTRIBUTES**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** of 2002, **3:124**

**AUCTIONS**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:111**

**AUDITS AND AUDITING**

See also **Accounting and Financial Matters** (this index)

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**AUTHORS**

Investment advisers, exclusions from definitions, **14:17**

**AUTOMATIC SHELF REGISTRATION**

WKSIs. **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

**BANK CERTIFICATES OF DEPOSIT**

Generally, **1:18**



## **BANKING**

Disclosure, accounting and financial matters, **7:284**

## **BANKRUPTCY**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:179**

## **BANKS**

See also **Multinational Development Banks** (this index)

Bank securities

Generally, **4:23 to 4:25**

Foreign banks, **4:24**

Regulation of, **4:25**

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

Foreign banks and bank securities, **4:24**

Investment advisers, exclusions from definitions, **14:15**

Regulation of bank securities, **4:25**

## **BASKET TRANSACTIONS**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:102**

## **BENEFICIAL OWNERSHIP**

**Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

## **BENEFIT PLAN TRANSACTIONS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:130**

## **BIDS AND BIDDING**

Disclosure requirements in third-party tender offers. See **Tender offers**, below in this heading

**Global Offerings** (this index)

**Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD)** (this index)

Regulation 14D. See **Tender offers**, below in this heading

Schedule TO, **11:83**

**Tender offers**

Disclosure requirements in third-party tender offers subject to Regulation 14D, **11:78**

Commencement, **11:80**

Communications, **11:81**

Filing, dissemination, and disclosure, **11:82**

Regulatory scheme, **11:79 to 11:82**

Schedule TO, **11:83**

Third-party tender offers. See **Tender offers**, above in this heading

## **BLACKOUT PERIODS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **BLIND POOLS**

Blue sky laws, public offering of securities by foreign issuers, **15:31**

## **BLUE SKY LAWS**

Generally, **15:1 et seq.**, **App. 15A**, **App. 15E**

## **BLUE SKY LAWS—Cont'd**

Accredited investors, recommended filings for limited offering to, **15:48**

Additional substantive considerations, public offerings by foreign issuers, **15:34**

Affiliates, transactions with, public offerings by foreign issuers, **15:26**

Agents, **15:6**

American Depositary Receipts, public offerings by foreign issuers, **15:16**

Application for coordinated state review (CER-1), **App. 15B**

Blind pools, public offerings by foreign issuers, **15:31**

Blue sky memorandum

See **Memorandum**, below in this heading

Covered securities, **App. 15A**

Rule 144A, **App. 15E**

Broker-dealer and agent (salesperson) registration provisions, **15:6**

Case law, private placements of securities under Martin Act, **15:51**

Cheap stock, public offerings by foreign issuers, **15:20**

Construction of “public offering” under Martin Act, **15:51**

Coordinated state review, Application for (CER-1), **App. 15B**

Debt service coverage, public offerings by foreign issuers, **15:30**

Definitions

Generally, **15:8 et seq.**

Sale, **15:10**

Scope of Uniform Securities Act provisions, **15:11**

Security, **15:9**

Depository receipts, **15:16**

Dilution, **15:21**

Directors, loans to, **15:23**

Disclosure, **15:29**

Dividends, **15:43**

Employees, loans to, **15:23**

Exemptions

Generally, **15:12 to 15:15**

National Securities Markets Improvement Act, **15:15**

Private offering exemptions and exclusions, **App. 15D**

Securities exemptions, **15:13**

Transaction exemptions, **15:14, 15:15**

Exhibits, **15:38**

Expenses, **15:27, 15:28**

Fair, just, and equitable review, **15:19**

Foreign investors

Private placements in U.S. by foreign issuers, below in this heading

**BLUE SKY LAWS—Cont'd**

Foreign investors—Cont'd  
 Public offering of securities by foreign issuers, below in this heading  
 Form D filing requirements, **15:46**  
 Form U-1, **15:37**  
 General expense limitations, **15:28**  
 Genesis, **15:2**  
 Importance of issuer's state of incorporation, **15:34**  
 Incorporation, importance of issuer's state of, **15:34**  
 Internet, public offering over, **15:41**  
 Investment adviser and investment adviser representative registration requirements, **15:7**  
 Limited offering to accredited investors, recommended filings for, **15:48**  
 Limits, general expense limitations, **15:28**  
 Loans to officers, directors, and employees, **15:23**  
 Martin Act, private placements of securities under, **15:49 to 15:51**  
 Mechanics and procedure, generally, **15:36 to 15:40**  
 Memorandum  
   Covered securities, **App. 15A**  
   Non-covered securities, **App. 15C**  
   Public offering of securities by foreign issuers, **15:39**  
   Rule 144A, **App. 15E**  
 NASAA, **15:3**  
 National Securities Markets Improvement Act, **15:15**  
 New York practice, **15:49 to 15:51**  
 Offering price and dilution, public offerings by foreign issuers, **15:21**  
 Officers, loans to, **15:23**  
 Options and warrants, **15:22**  
 Ordinary shares, **15:17**  
 Price, offering, foreign issuers' public offerings, **15:21**  
 Private offering exemptions and exclusions, **App. 15D**  
 Private placements, international financial transactions and capital markets, **5:32, 5:57**  
 Private placements in U.S. by foreign investors  
   Changes in timing of filings, **15:45**  
   Filing requirement, **15:46**  
   Recommended filings for limited offering to accredited investors, **15:48**  
   Rule 506 offerings, variations in Rule 506 offerings, **15:47**  
   Timing of filings, changes in, **15:45**  
   Variations in Rule 506 offerings, **15:47**  
 Private placements of securities under Martin Act, New York practice, **15:49 to 15:51**

**BLUE SKY LAWS—Cont'd**

Public offering of securities by foreign issuers  
 Generally, **2:4, 2:5, 15:16 et seq.**  
 Additional substantive considerations, **15:35**  
 Affiliates, transactions with, **15:26**  
 American Depositary Receipts, **15:16**  
 Blind pools, **15:31**  
 Cheap stock, **15:20**  
 Communications between states, **15:33**  
 Debt service coverage, **15:30**  
 Directors, loans to officers, directors, and employees, **15:23**  
 Disclosure, **15:29**  
 Employees, loans to officers, directors, and employees, **15:23**  
 Exhibits, **15:38**  
 Expenses, **15:27, 15:28**  
 Fair, just, and equitable standard, **15:19**  
 Form U-1, **15:37**  
 General expense limitations, **15:28**  
 Importance of issuer's state of incorporation, **15:34**  
 Incorporation, importance of issuer's state of, **15:34**  
 Internet, public offering over, **15:41**  
 Limitations, general expense limitations, **15:28**  
 Loans to officers, directors, and employees, **15:23**  
 Mechanics and procedure, generally, **15:36 to 15:40**  
 Memorandum, **15:39**  
 Offering price and dilution, **15:21**  
 Officers, loans, **15:23**  
 Options and warrants, **15:22**  
 Ordinary shares, **15:17**  
 Sharing of expenses, **15:27**  
 Sovereign offerings, **15:42**  
 States, **15:33, 15:34**  
 Stock dividends, **15:43**  
 Substantive considerations, **15:18 et seq.**  
 Timing, **15:32, 15:40, 15:45**  
 Transactions with affiliates, **15:26**  
 Underwriters' warrants, **15:25**  
 Voting rights, **15:24**  
 Warrants, **15:22, 15:25**  
 Receipts, American depositary receipts, **15:16**  
 Recommended filings for limited offering to accredited investors, **15:48**  
 Registration, **2:4, 2:5, 15:5 to 15:7**  
 Relevant provisions of Martin Act, **15:50**  
 Rule 144A Blue Sky Memorandum, **App. 15E**  
 Rule 144A transactions, **15:52, App. 15E**  
 Rule 506 offerings, **15:44, 15:47**  
 Sale defined, **15:10**  
 Salesperson registration provisions, **15:6**

## **BLUE SKY LAWS—Cont'd**

- Scope of Uniform Securities Act provisions, **15:11**
- Secondary trading, **15:53**
- Securities exemptions, **15:13**
- Securities registration provisions, **15:5**
- Security defined, **15:9**
- Sharing of expenses, **15:27**
- Sovereign offerings, **15:42**
- States, **5:32, 5:57, 15:34, App. 15B**
- Statutes, private placement of securities under Martin Act, **15:50**
- Stock dividends, **15:43**
- Structure, **15:4**
- Timing, **15:32, 15:40, 15:45**
- Transaction exemptions, **15:14**
- Underwriters' warrants, **15:25**
- Uniform Securities Act, generally, **15:11**
- Variations in Rule 506 offerings, **15:47**
- Voting rights, **15:24**
- Warrants, **15:22, 15:25**

## **BLUE SKY MEMORANDUM**

- Covered securities, **App. 15A**
- Non-covered securities, **App. 15C**
- Public offering of securities by foreign issuers, **15:39**
- Rule 144A, **App. 15E**

## **BOARD COMMITTEES**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:59**

## **BOARD OF DIRECTORS**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **BONUSES**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:149**
- Taiwan, **7:320**

## **BOOKKEEPING**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:72**

## **BRAZIL**

- Accounting and financial matters
  - Inflationary status, **7:304**
  - Inflation indices, **7:303**

## **BROADCAST RELEASES**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:99**

## **BROCHURE RULE**

- Investment advisers, **14:42**

## **BROKER**

- See **Broker-Dealers** (this index)

## **BROKER-DEALERS**

- Generally, **13:1 et seq.**
- Accuracy of required records, regulation, **13:194**

## **BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

- Affiliates
  - Banks, exceptions and exemptions from definitions, **13:47, 13:48**
  - De minimis exception, **13:60**
  - Relations between registered and unregistered affiliates, **13:121**
- Aggregate indebtedness standard, protection of customer funds and securities, **13:210, 13:211**
- Annual audit report and supplemental reports, **13:199**
- Annual report on revenue and expenses, **13:198**
- Antifraud regulation
  - Generally, **13:159**
  - Churning, fraud against customers, **13:172**
  - Close-out and pre-borrow requirements, restrictions on short sales, **13:178**
  - Confirmation rule, fraud against customers, **13:164**
  - Cooling-off period, duty to investigate and suitability doctrine, **13:170**
  - Delivery requirements for short sales, **13:176 to 13:178**
  - Directed brokerage, fraud involving commissions against customers, **13:173**
  - Disclosure and suitability requirements, duty to investigate, **13:170**
  - Disclosure of credit terms, fraud against customers, **13:165**
  - Duty of best execution, fraud against customers, **13:161**
  - Duty of fair dealing, fraud against customers, **13:160**
  - Excessive markups and markdowns, fraud against customers, **13:163**
  - Fiduciary duties, fraud against customers, **13:166**
  - Fraud against customers, **13:160 to 13:173**
  - Investigation duty, fraud against customers, **13:167 to 13:171**
  - Locate requirements for short sales, **13:176 to 13:178**
  - Long sales delivery requirements, restrictions on short sales, **13:182**
  - Order marking requirements, restrictions on short sales, **13:180**
  - Ownership, definition, **13:181**
  - Payment for order flow, fraud involving commissions against customers, **13:173**
  - Penny stock, definition, **13:169**
  - Prevailing market price for determining markups and markdowns, fraud against customers, **13:162**
  - Purposes of short selling, restrictions on short sales, **13:174**
  - Regulation SHO, **13:175**

**BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

## Antifraud regulation—Cont'd

Restrictions on short sales, **13:174 to 13:185**Rule 105 of Regulation M, **13:185**SEC penny stock rules, duty to investigate, **13:168, 13:169**Shingle theory, fraud against customers, **13:160**Short sale defined, restrictions on short sales, **13:174**Soft dollar arrangements, fraud involving commissions against customers, **13:173**SRO suitability requirements, duty to investigate and suitability doctrine, **13:171**Suitability doctrine, fraud against customers, **13:167 to 13:171**Temporary suspension of short sale price tests for certain securities, **13:179**Uniform short sale price test proposal, **13:184**

## Anti-money laundering compliance obligations

AML compliance programs, **13:246**Background, **13:245**BSA reporting requirements, **13:256**CIPs, customer identification programs, **13:247 to 13:250**Correspondent accounts, due diligence programs, **13:252**Covered persons, customer identification programs, **13:248**Customer identification programs (CIPs), **13:247 to 13:250**Due diligence programs for certain foreign accounts, **13:251 to 13:253**Foreign accounts, special due diligence programs for certain accounts, **13:251 to 13:253**Foreign shell banks, correspondent accounts, **13:254**Information sharing, **13:258**OFAC sanctions programs, **13:260**Primary money laundering, special measures, **13:259**Private banking account, due diligence programs, **13:253**Procedures, customer identification programs, **13:249**Records of funds (wire) transfers, **13:257**Reliance on another financial institution to perform procedures, customer identification programs, **13:250**Special due diligence programs for certain foreign accounts, **13:251 to 13:253**Suspicious activity reporting, **13:255**Wire transfers, records, **13:257**

## Applications

SEC registration, Form BD, **13:124****BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

## Applications—Cont'd

SRO membership, **13:132**

## Approval process

SEC registration, **13:127**SRO membership, **13:135**Audit report and supplemental reports, annual, **13:199**Back-office services, support service providers, **13:21**

## Banks

Acting as broker-dealers, **13:34**Affiliate transactions, **13:47, 13:48**Defined, **13:8, 13:9, 13:24 to 13:80**De minimis exception, **13:58 to 13:80**Employee benefit plans, exceptions and exemptions from definitions, **13:38**Exceptions and exemptions from definitions, **13:24 to 13:81**Finders, networking arrangements, **13:8, 13:9**Identified banking products, **13:56**Money market funds, **13:46**Municipal securities, **13:57**NASD Rule 2350, **13:9**

## Networking arrangements

Exceptions and exemptions from definitions, **13:27 to 13:30**Finders, **13:8, 13:9**Private placements, **13:49**Regulation S transactions with non-U.S. persons, **13:50**Safekeeping and custody activities, **13:51 to 13:55**Securities transactions permissible, **13:39**Stock purchase plans, **13:40**Sweep accounts, **13:41 to 13:45**Trust and fiduciary activities, **13:31 to 13:37**Bank Secrecy Act, protection of customer funds and securities, **13:193**Blue sky laws, registration provisions, broker-dealer and agent (salesperson), **15:6**Broker defined, **13:5 to 13:22**Bulletin boards, finders, **13:14 to 13:16**

## Business continuity planning

NASD and NYSE business continuity rules, **13:261**SEC recommendations, **13:262**Business in securities defined, **13:4, 13:81**Chinese walls, insider trading prevention, **13:186**Churning, fraud against customers, **13:172**Close-out and pre-borrow requirements, restrictions on short sales, **13:178**Commercial paper, business exclusively in, **13:86**Communications links and trade support, support service providers, **13:20**Computation of net capital, **13:209**

**BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

- Computers, Internet referrals and web links, **13:13**
- Confirmation rule, fraud against customers, **13:164**
- Conflicts of interest. Research analyst conflicts of interest, *infra*
- Consolidated supervised entities (CSEs)
  - Generally, **13:294**
  - Early warning requirements, requirements, **13:297**
  - Financial reports, requirements, **13:300**
  - Internal risk management procedures, requirements, **13:298**
  - Net capital requirements, requirements, **13:296**
  - Recordkeeping, requirements, **13:299**
  - Requirements for broker-dealers, **13:295 to 13:300**
  - Ultimate holding company requirements, **13:301**
- Cooling-off period, duty to investigate and suitability doctrine, **13:170**
- Credit regulation
  - Generally, **13:272**
  - Account structure, Regulation T, **13:276**
  - Arranging credit, Regulation T, **13:277**
  - Enforcement, Regulation T, **13:278**
  - Extension of credit by broker-dealers, Regulation T, **13:273 to 13:278**
  - Extension of credit on “new issue” distributions, **13:281**
  - Free credit balances, protection of customer funds and securities, **13:217**
  - Margin and exempted securities, Regulation T, **13:275**
  - Margin requirement, Regulation T, **13:274**
  - “New issue” distributions, credit extended on, **13:281**
  - Regulation T, **13:273**
  - SEC and CFTC margin requirements for futures products, **13:279**
  - SRO margin rules, **13:280**
- Custody activities, exceptions and exemption from definitions, **13:51 to 13:55**
- Custody rule, protection of customer funds and securities, **13:215**
- Customer protection rule, **13:214**
- Customer statements, reports, **13:200**
- Dealer-trader distinction, **13:23**
- Definitions
  - Generally, **13:3 et seq.**
  - Banks, **13:8, 13:9, 13:24 to 13:80**
  - Broker, **13:5 to 13:22**
  - Business in securities, **13:4, 13:81**
  - Dealer-trader distinguished from dealer, **13:23**

**BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

- Definitions—Cont'd
  - Employees of issuer making direct distribution, **13:19**
  - Financial institutions, **13:8, 13:9**
  - Finders, brokers as, **13:6 to 3:16**
  - Investment adviser, broker as, **13:17**
  - Issuers and employees, **13:18, 13:19**
  - Ownership, **13:181**
  - Penny stock, **13:169**
  - Privacy of consumer financial information, **13:226**
  - Short sale defined, **13:174**
- Delivery requirements for short sales, antifraud regulation, **13:176 to 13:178**
- De minimis exception
  - Affiliates, exceptions not applicable, **13:60**
  - Asset-backed transactions, **13:65**
- Banks
  - Broker, exceptions from definition, **13:26, 13:60**
  - Credit unions, **13:78 to 13:80**
  - Dealer, exceptions from definition, **13:62 to 13:66, 13:72**
  - Dealer, exemptions from definition, **13:67 to 13:72**
  - Exceptions from definitions of “broker” and “dealer,” **13:58 to 13:80**
  - Rescission liability, temporary exemption, **13:73**
  - Thriffs, **13:74 to 13:77**
- Credit unions
  - Generally, **13:78**
  - Current treatment, **13:79**
  - Proposed exemptions, **13:80**
- Definition of dealer, exceptions, **13:62**
- Fiduciary transactions, **13:64**
- Identified banking products, **13:66**
- Investment transactions, **13:64**
- Permissible securities transactions, **13:63**
- Rule 3a5-1 under Exchange Act, **13:59**
- Statutory exception, **13:58**
- Thriffs
  - Generally, **13:74**
  - Additional proposed exemptions, **13:77**
  - Current exemption, **13:75**
  - Proposed redesignation of current exemption, **13:76**
- Trustee transactions, **13:64**
- Two step analysis, “dealer” registration requirement, **13:61**
- Designated examining authority, **13:139**
- Direct contacts. Foreign broker-dealers, exemptions for, *below in this heading*
- Directed brokerage, fraud involving commissions against customers, **13:173**



**BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

Disclosure and suitability requirements, duty to investigate, **13:170**

Disclosure of credit terms, fraud against customers, **13:165**

Dual employees, Rule 15a-6, **13:120**

Duty of best execution, fraud against customers, **13:161**

Early warnings

- Protection of customer funds and securities, **13:213**
- Recordkeeping violations, **13:195**

Electronic submission of trading data, **13:206**

Electronic trading systems

- Alternative trading systems and Regulation ATS, **13:309**
- Day trading, **13:316**
- Internal broker-dealer systems, **13:311**
- Online brokerage and electronic communications, **13:310**
- Protection of customer funds and securities, **13:206**
- Regulation ATS, **13:309**

Employee benefit plans, proposed exemption from definitions of “broker” and “dealer,” **13:38**

Employee leasing services, **13:22**

Employees of issuer making direct distribution, **13:19**

Enforcement

- Inspections, **13:313**
- Private rights of action, **13:316**
- SEC sanctions, **13:315**
- SRO sanctions, **13:314**

Excessive markups and markdowns, fraud against customers, **13:163**

Exchange Act, Rule 15a-6. See Foreign broker-dealers, exemptions for, below in this heading

Exclusions and exemptions

- Generally, **13:24 et seq.**
- Banks and other financial institutions, definitions, **13:24 to 13:80**
- Commercial paper, business exclusively in, **13:86**
- Foreign broker-dealers, exemptions for, below in this heading
- Government securities, business exclusively in, **13:87**
- Section 15 registration requirement, **13:81 to 13:121**
- Security futures products, **13:153 et seq.**

Expenses, annual report, **13:198**

Expense sharing agreements, reports, **13:202**

Fiduciary duties, fraud against customers, **13:166**

Financial institutions. Banks, above in this heading

**BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

Financial reports, protection of customer funds and securities, **13:196 to 13:206**

Financial responsibility, generally, **13:207 to 13:222**

Finders

- Brokers as, defined, **13:6 to 13:16**
- Bulletin boards, **13:14 to 13:16**
- Definitions, networking arrangements, **13:7 to 13:12**
- Financial institutions, networking arrangements, **13:8, 13:9**
- Insurance agencies, networking arrangements, **13:10**
- Internet referrals and web links, **13:13**
- Issuer bulletin boards, **13:16**
- NASD Rule 2350, **13:9**
- Networking arrangements, definitions, **13:7 to 13:12**
- Real estate brokers or agents, networking arrangements, **13:11**
- Referral networks or affinity groups, networking arrangements, **13:12**
- Third-party bulletin boards, **13:15**

Foreign broker-dealers, exemptions for

- Generally, **13:92 et seq.**
- Classes of persons, **13:105 to 13:109**
- Direct contacts, generally, **13:97 et seq.**
- Exchange Act, Rule 15a-6, generally, **13:91 et seq.**
- Foreign associated persons, **13:99**
- Foreign broker-dealer, **13:98**
- Foreign persons temporarily present in U.S., **13:108**
- Government securities activities, **13:113**
- International organizations, **13:107**
- Memoranda of understanding, **13:118**
- NAFTA, **13:115**
- Nondirect contacts, **13:94 to 13:96**
- Quotation systems, third-party, **13:110**
- Registered broker-dealer, **13:106**
- Registration requirements, generally, **13:92 et seq.**
- Research reports provided by major U.S. institutional investors, **13:95**
- Residence, U.S. persons resident abroad, **13:109**
- Stock-exchange linkages, trades through, **13:111**
- Temporary visits, foreign persons temporarily present in U.S., **13:108**
- Third-party quotation systems, **13:110**
- Unsolicited transactions, nondirect contacts, **13:94**
- U.S. persons resident abroad, **13:109**
- Violations of U.S. law, **13:114**

**BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

- Foreign broker-dealers, exemptions for—Cont'd
  - Visits to U.S., **13:101**
  - World Trade Organization financial services agreement, **13:116**
- Foreign persons temporarily present in U.S., **13:108**
- Foreign residence, U.S. persons resident abroad, **13:109**
- Form BD, SEC registration, **13:124**
- Form BDW, SEC registration, notice of withdrawal from, **13:146**
- Form of record retention, **13:191**
- Free credit balances, protection of customer funds and securities, **13:217**
- Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:73**
- Government securities, **13:40, 13:87**
- Hiring, **13:304**
- Hypothecation of customers' securities, **13:219**
- Identified banking products
  - De minimis exception, **13:66**
  - Statutory exception from definition, **13:56**
- Independent accountant selection, **13:143**
- Insider trading prevention
  - Chinese walls, **13:186**
  - Private securities transactions of associated person, **13:187**
  - Restrictions on private security trading, **13:187**
- Inspection, security futures products, **13:155**
- Insurance agencies, finders, **13:10**
- Internal procedures, **13:303 to 13:306**
- Internet referrals and web links, finders, **13:13**
- Investigation duty, fraud against customers, **13:167 to 13:171**
- Investment adviser defined, **13:17, 14:16**
- Issuer bulletin boards, finders, **13:16**
- Issuers and employees
  - Definitions, **13:18, 13:19**
  - Employees of issuer making direct distribution, **13:19**
- Jurisdiction, registration requirement, **13:2**
- Limits on withdrawing equity, protection of customer funds and securities, **13:212**
- Locate requirements for short sales, antifraud regulation, **13:176 to 13:178**
- Long sales delivery requirements, restrictions on short sales, **13:182**
- Lost and Stolen Securities Program registration, **13:142**
- Margin securities, installment payment arrangement, global offerings, **10:12**
- Material inadequacies in accounting systems and procedures, early warnings, **13:213**
- Membership in SRO, **13:129 to 13:140**
- Memoranda of understanding, **13:118**

**BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

- Money market funds, proposed exemption from definition, **13:46**
- Monthly reports, **13:197**
- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:76**
- Municipal securities, statutory exception from definition, **13:57**
- NAFTA, **13:115**
- NASD, self-regulatory organizations, **13:130**
- NASD Rule 2350, finders, **13:9**
- Net capital declines, protection of customer funds and securities, **13:213**
- Net capital rule, protection of customer funds and securities, **13:208 to 13:213**
- New York Stock Exchange, membership on, **13:138**
- New York stock exchange rules
  - Research analyst conflicts of interest, **13:270**
  - Self-regulatory organizations, **13:241**
- Nondirect contacts. See Foreign broker dealers, exemption for, above in this heading
- Nonresident broker-dealers, regulation, **13:192**
- Notice registration
  - CFTC, **13:149**
  - Conversion to full registration, **13:157**
  - SEC, **13:150 to 13:152**
- Order marking requirements, restrictions on short sales, **13:180**
- OTC derivatives dealers
  - Annual audit report and supplemental reports, **13:288**
  - Commodity Exchange Act and related rules, **13:293**
  - Confirmation rule, **13:282**
  - Control of customer securities, **13:291**
  - Credit regulation, **13:292**
  - Early warning requirements, **13:290**
  - Exemption from SRO membership, **13:140**
  - Financial reports, **13:286 to 13:289**
  - Internal risk management control system, **13:283**
  - Net capital requirements, **13:284**
  - Notification of change of fiscal year, **13:289**
  - Quarterly reports, **13:287**
  - Recordkeeping, **13:285**
  - Rehypothecation of customer securities, **13:291**
- Payment for order flow, fraud involving commissions against customers, **13:173**
- Payroll and employee leasing services, **13:22**
- Penny stock, definition, **13:169**
- Person providing support services to registered broker-dealers, defined, **13:20 to 13:22**
- Place of record retention, **13:191**

**BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

Prevailing market price for determining markups and markdowns, fraud against customers, **13:162**

Privacy of consumer financial information

- Annual privacy notice to consumers, **13:228**
- Content of notices to consumers, **13:229**
- Definitions, **13:226**
- Delivery of privacy and opt out notices, **13:232**
- Disposal of consumer report information, **13:236**
- Exceptions to right to opt out, **13:234**
- Initial privacy notice to consumers, **13:227**
- Limits on disclosure, **13:233**
- Opt out methods, **13:230**
- Opt out notice, form, **13:230**
- Opt out notices and privacy, **13:225**
- Relation of Regulation S-P to other privacy laws and rules, **13:237**
- Revised privacy notices, **13:231**
- Rule of construction, **13:224**
- Safeguards, **13:235**
- SEC privacy rules (Regulation S-P), **13:223**

Private placements

- Net capital rule, **5:55, 5:56**
- Rule 506(c), **5:16**
- Rule 144A, **5:55, 5:56**
- Statutory exception from definition, **13:49**

Private securities transactions of associated person, **13:187**

Protection of customer funds and securities

- Generally, **13:188**
- Accuracy of required records, **13:194**
- Aggregate indebtedness standard, **13:210, 13:211**
- Annual audit report and supplemental reports, **13:199**
- Annual report on revenue and expenses, **13:198**
- Audit report and supplemental reports, annual, **13:199**
- Bank Secrecy Act, **13:193**
- Computation of net capital, **13:209**
- Custody rule, **13:215**
- Customer insurance, SIPC, **13:221**
- Customer protection rule, **13:214**
- Customer statements, reports, **13:200**
- Early warnings, **13:195, 13:213**
- Electronic submission of trading data, **13:206**
- Expenses, annual report, **13:198**
- Expense sharing agreements, reports, **13:202**
- Financial reports, **13:196 to 13:206**
- Financial responsibility, generally, **13:207 to 13:222**
- Form of record retention, **13:191**
- Free credit balances, **13:217**

**BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

Protection of customer funds and securities

- Cont'd
- Hypothecation of customers' securities, **13:219**
- Limits on withdrawing equity, **13:212**
- Liquidation proceedings, SIPC, **13:222**
- Material inadequacies in accounting systems and procedures, early warnings, **13:213**
- Monthly reports concerning broker-dealer, **13:197**
- Net capital declines, **13:213**
- Net capital rule, **13:208 to 13:213**
- Nonresident broker-dealers, **13:192**
- Place of record retention, **13:191**
- Purpose of recordkeeping requirements, **13:189**
- Quarterly box counts, **13:218**
- Quarterly reports concerning broker-dealer, **13:197**
- Recordkeeping, generally, **13:189 to 13:195**
- Reporting risks for affiliates, **13:203 to 13:205**
- Reserve rule, **13:216**
- Retention of records, time, place and form, **13:191**
- Revenue, annual report, **13:198**
- Risk assessment rules, reporting risks for affiliates, **13:204**
- Securities Investor Protection Act of 1970 (SIPA), **13:221**
- Securities Investor Protection Corporation (SIPC), **13:220 to 13:222**
- Supervised investment bank holding company (SIBHC) rules, **13:205**
- Time of record retention, **13:191**
- Triggering events, reports, **13:201**
- Types of records to be maintained, **13:190**
- Use of customer balances, **13:217**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S.

- Electronic media, use of, **2:110**
- Research reports, **2:74 to 2:77**

Purposes of short selling, restrictions on short sales, **13:174**

Quarterly box counts, protection of customer funds and securities, **13:218**

Quarterly reports concerning broker-dealers, **13:197**

Real estate brokers or agents, finders, **13:11**

Recordkeeping, generally, **13:189 to 13:195**

Referral networks or affinity groups, finders, **13:12**

Registration, generally, **13:1 et seq.**

Registration process

- Generally, **13:122**
- Foreign broker-dealers, state requirements, **13:145**

**BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

- Registration process—Cont'd
  - Miscellaneous Federal requirements, **13:141 to 13:143**
  - Notice registration, above in this heading
  - SEC registration, below
  - Security futures products, **13:148 to 13:157**
  - Self-regulatory organizations, below
  - State requirements, **13:144, 13:145**
  - Withdrawal, **13:146, 13:147**
- Regulation. Substantive regulation, *infra*
- Regulation SHO, antifraud regulation, **13:175**
- Regulation S transactions with non-U.S. persons, **13:50**
- Regulation T. Credit regulations, above in this heading
- Reporting risks for affiliates, **13:203 to 13:205**
- Requirements of registration, **13:2**
- Research analyst conflicts of interest
  - Generally, **13:263**
  - Dissemination of research in U.S., foreign broker-dealers, **13:267**
  - Global research settlement, **13:271**
  - NASD rules, **13:270**
  - NYSE rules, **13:270**
  - Registered broker-dealer associated with foreign broker-dealers, **13:268**
  - Registered broker-dealer not associated with foreign broker-dealers, **13:269**
  - Regulation AC and Rule 15a-6, foreign broker-dealers, **13:266 to 13:269**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **13:264**
  - SEC Regulation AC, **13:265 to 13:269**
- Research reports
  - Provided to other U.S. persons, **13:96**
  - Provided to U.S. institutional investors, **13:95**
- Reserve rule, protection of customer funds and securities, **13:216**
- Residence, U.S. persons resident abroad, **13:109**
- Restrictions on short sales. Regulation, *supra*
- Retention of records, time, place and form, **13:191**
- Revenue, annual report, **13:198**
- Risk assessment rules, reporting risks for affiliates, **13:204**
- Rule 105 of Regulation M, antifraud regulation, **13:185**
- Safekeeping and custody activities, exceptions and exemption from definitions, **13:51 to 13:55**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:155, 7:70, 13:264**
- SEC penny stock rules, duty to investigate, **13:168, 13:169**
- SEC registration
  - Generally, **13:123**
  - Approval process, **13:127**

**BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

- SEC registration—Cont'd
  - Branch office registration, **13:125**
  - Cancellation, **13:147**
  - Foreign applicants, **13:126**
  - Form BD, application for SEC registration, **13:124**
  - Notice registration, broker-dealers for limited purpose, **13:150 to 13:152**
  - Section 15(b) registration, **13:124 to 13:128**
  - Successor registration, **13:128**
  - Withdrawal, **13:146, 13:147**
- Section 15 registration requirement
  - Generally, **13:2, 13:82**
  - Associated persons of broker-dealer, **13:83**
  - Business exclusively in certain securities, **13:85 to 13:89**
  - Commercial paper, business exclusively in, **13:86**
  - Exceptions and exemptions, generally, **13:81 to 13:121**
  - Government securities, business exclusively in, **13:87**
  - Interstate business exclusively, **13:84**
  - Municipal securities not “exempted securities,” **13:88**
  - Mutual fund shares sold abroad by foreign broker-dealers to foreign citizens, exemption, **13:90**
  - Other exemptions for foreign broker-dealers, **13:91**
- Rule 15a-6
  - Generally, **13:93**
  - CAFTA-DR, **13:117**
  - Direct contracts, **13:97 to 13:109**
  - Dual employees, **13:120**
  - Exchange Act, **13:91**
  - Foreign persons temporarily present in United States, transactions with, **13:108**
  - General rule, transactions with certain classes of persons, **13:105**
  - Government securities activities, **13:113**
  - International organizations, transactions with, **13:107**
  - Memorandum of Understanding, **13:118**
  - NAFTA, **13:115**
  - Non-direct contacts, **13:94 to 13:96**
  - Participation in exempt exchanges, **13:112**
  - Participation in third-party and proprietary electronic quotation systems, **13:110**
  - Registered broker-dealers and banks acting as broker dealers, transactions with, **13:106**
  - Registration of separately organized and registered U.S. affiliate, **13:119**
  - Relations between registered and unregistered affiliates, **13:121**

**BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

## Section 15 registration requirement—Cont'd

## Rule 15a-6—Cont'd

Section 15(a)(1) registration requirement for foreign broker-dealers before Rule 15a-6, **13:92**

Trades through stock-exchange linkages, **13:111**

Treasury Regulation § 401.9, **13:91**

U.S. persons resident abroad, transactions with, **13:109**

Violations of U.S. law, **13:114**

World Trade Organization financial services agreement, **13:116**

SEC, Section 15(b) registration, **13:124 to 13:128**

Securities sold in transactions exempt from Securities Act registration not necessarily “exempted securities,” **13:89**

Treasury Regulation § 401.9, Rule 15a-6, **13:91**

## Securities

Business in securities defined, **13:4, 13:81**

Transactions permissible, statutory exception from definition, **13:39**

Securities Exchange Act, Rule 15a-6. See Foreign broker-dealers, exemptions for, above in this heading

Securities Investor Protection Act of 1970 (SIPA), **13:221**

## Securities Investor Protection Corporation (SIPC)

Customer insurance, SIPC, **13:221**

Exemption from membership, **13:154**

Liquidation proceedings, SIPC, **13:222**

Membership, **13:141**

Securities Investor Protection Act of 1970 (SIPA), **13:220**

## Security futures products

Generally, **13:148**

Conversion to full registration, **13:157**

Exemptions, **13:153 et seq.**

Inspection, **13:155**

Notice registration with CFTC, **13:149**

Notice registration with SEC, **13:150 to 152**

Registration process, **13:148 to 13:157**

## Self-regulatory organizations

Generally, **13:123, 13:239**

Application for NASD membership, **13:132**

Approval process, NASD membership, **13:135**

Continuing education program, broker-dealer personnel, **13:243**

Designated examining authority, **13:139**

Exemption from membership, OTC derivatives dealers, **13:140**

Form U4, registration of broker-dealer personnel, **13:242**

**BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

## Self-regulatory organizations—Cont'd

Form U5, termination of registration, **13:244**

Functions of SROs, **13:238**

General requirements, **13:129**

Membership agreement, NASD membership, **13:136**

Members residing outside United States, NASD membership, **13:137**

NASD conduct rule, **13:240**

NASD membership, **13:130 to 13:137**

NYSE and other stock exchanges membership, **13:138**

NYSE rules, **13:241**

OTC derivatives dealers, exemption from SRO membership, **13:140**

Other requirements for NASD membership, **13:133**

Oversight by SEC, **13:238**

Personnel regulation by SRO, **13:242 to 13:244**

Pre-membership interview, NASD membership, **13:134**

Qualifying examinations, broker-dealer personnel, **13:243**

Registration and required personnel, **13:242**

Regulation of broker-dealer personnel, **13:242 to 13:244**

SRO suitability requirements, duty to investigate and suitability doctrine, **13:171**

Separately organized and registered U.S. affiliate, **13:119**

Shingle theory, fraud against customers, **13:160**

Short sale defined, restrictions on short sales, **13:174**

Soft dollar arrangements, fraud involving commissions against customers, **13:173**

SROs. Self-regulatory organizations, above

State requirements for registration

Generally, **13:144**

Foreign broker-dealers, **13:145**

Stock-exchange linkages, trades through, **13:111**

Stock purchase plans, statutory exception from definition, **13:24 to 13:81**

## Substantive regulation

Generally, **13:158**

Antifraud regulation, *supra*

Business continuity planning, *supra*

Consolidated supervised entities (CSEs), *supra*

Credit regulation, *supra*

Dual registrants, transactions in security futures products, **13:302**

Duty of fair dealing, fraud against customers, **13:160**

Fraud against customers. Antifraud regulation, *infra*



## **BROKER-DEALERS—Cont'd**

- Substantive regulation—Cont'd
  - Insider trading prevention, *supra*
  - OTC derivatives dealers, *supra*
  - Prevention of insider trading. Insider trading, *supra*
  - Privacy of consumer financial information, *supra*
  - Protection of customer funds and securities, *supra*
  - Recordkeeping, generally, **13:189 to 13:195**
  - Research analyst conflicts of interest, *infra*
  - Self-regulatory organizations, regulation of broker-dealer personnel, **13:242 to 13:244**
  - Transactions in security futures products, **13:302**
- Suitability doctrine, fraud against customers, **13:167 to 13:171**
- Supervised investment bank holding company (SIBHC) rules, **13:205**
- Supervision
  - Generally, **13:305**
  - NASD supervision requirements, **13:306**
- Support service providers
  - Back-office services, **13:21**
  - Communications links and trade support, definitions, **13:20**
  - Definitions, **13:20 to 13:22**
  - Payroll and employee leasing services, **13:22**
- Sweep accounts, exceptions and exemptions from definitions, **13:41 to 13:45**
- Temporary suspension of short sale price tests for certain securities, **13:179**
- Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)
- Third-party bulletin boards, finders, **13:15**
- Third-party quotation systems, **13:110**
- Trading by members of exchanges
  - Additional regulations concerning transactions effected on exchanges, **13:307**
  - Order execution obligations, **13:308**
  - Regulation NMS, Rules 602 through 604, **13:308**
- Triggering events, protection of customer funds and securities, **13:201**
- Trust and fiduciary activities, exceptions and exemptions from definitions, **13:31 to 13:37**
- Uniform short sale price test proposal, antifraud regulation, **13:184**
- U.S. persons resident abroad, **13:109**
- Violations of U.S. law, **13:114**
- Withdrawal from SEC registration
  - Cancellation of registration, **13:147**
  - Form BDW, Uniform Request for Broker-Dealer Withdrawal, **13:146**
- World Trade Organization financial services agreement, **13:116**

## **BULLETIN BOARDS**

- Broker-dealer registration, finders, **13:14 to 13:16**

## **BUSINESS, ENGAGING IN**

- Defined, **14:12**

## **BUSINESS COMBINATIONS**

- See also **Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD)** (this index)
- Cross-Border Business Combination Rules** (this index)
- Financial statements, **7:162 to 7:179**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:104**
- Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

## **BUSINESS CONTINUITY PLANNING**

- Broker-Dealers** (this index)

## **BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT COMPANY**

- Investment advisors, performance fee contract, **14:50**

## **BUSINESS IN SECURITIES**

- Broker-dealers, **13:4, 13:81**

## **CAFTA-DR**

- Foreign broker-dealers, **13:115**

## **CALCULATION OR COMPUTATION**

- Fair market value of Section 13(f) securities, filing threshold calculations, **11:37**
- Institutional investment managers, persons subject of Section 13(f) reporting, **11:36**
- Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, calculating profit, **11:25**

## **CANADA**

- Accounting and financial matters
  - Flow through shares, **7:295**
  - Reporting currency changes in, **7:136**
- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD)** (this index)

## **CANCELLATION (WITHDRAWAL) TO SALES TRADES**

- American Depositary Receipts, **8:13**

## **CAPITAL**

- American Depositary Receipts, **8:26**

## **CARRYING OVER STABILIZING BID**

- Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 104, **10:143**

## **CASE LAW**

- Blue Sky Law, private placements of securities under Martin Act, New York practice, **15:51**

## **CASH DIVIDENDS**

- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:168**

**CASH FLOW**

Price level adjusted, **7:145**

**CASHLESS OPTION EXERCISES**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:127**

**CASH MANAGEMENT**

Liquidity and capital resources, generally, **7:201**

**CASH REFERRAL FEES**

Investment advisers, **14:47**

**CAUTIONARY ADVICE**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **7:214**

**CEASE AND DESIST ORDERS**

Global offerings, Regulation M, **10:159**

**CEO**

See **Chief Executive Officer (CEO)** (this index)

**CERTIFICATES AND CERTIFICATION**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:92**  
Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD),  
**12:101**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**CERTIFICATES OF DEPOSIT**

Generally, **1:18**

**CFO**

See **Chief Financial Officer (CFO)** (this index)

**CFTC**

Broker-dealers, notice registration, **13:149**

**CHARTER**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:111, 3:118**

**CHEAP STOCK**

Blue Sky Law, **15:20**

**CHIEF EXECUTIVE OFFICER (CEO)**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:191, 6:158**

**CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER (CFO)**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:129, 6:181**

**CHIEF LEGAL OFFICER (CLO)**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:158, 6:159, 6:163**

**CHILE**

Accounting and financial matters

Profit distributions, **7:306**

Translation of foreign subsidiaries, **7:305**

**CHOICE OF LAW**

Global offerings, **10:11**

**CIVIL ACTIONS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**CIVIL LIABILITY**

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD),  
**12:65, 12:66**

**CLASSES OF PERSONS**

Foreign broker-dealers, exemptions for, **13:105 to 13:109**

**CLASSIFICATION OF ISSUERS**

**Securities Offering Reform** (this index)

**CLASS OF SECURITIES**

Listing requirements, **3:27**

**CLO**

See **Chief Legal Officer (CLO)** (this index)

**CLOSED-END INVESTMENT COMPANIES**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 102,  
**10:125**

**CODIFICATION**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:104**

**COLUMBIA**

Accounting and financial matters, price level  
adjusting, **7:307**

**COMMERCIAL PAPER**

Generally, **4:26 et seq.**

Broker-dealers, business exclusively in, **13:86**

Exemptions. Section 3(a)(3) exemption, below in  
this heading

Not exceeding nine months, Section 3(a)(3)  
exemption, **4:31**

Not ordinarily purchased by general public, Sec-  
tion 3(a)(3) exemption, **4:29**

Prime quality, Section 3(a)(3) exemption, **4:28**

Section 3(a)(2), **4:33**

Section 4(2), **4:32**

Section 3(a)(3) exemption

Generally, **4:27 et seq.**

Not exceeding nine months, **4:31**

Not ordinarily purchased by general public,  
**4:29**

Prime quality, **4:28**

Used to facilitate current transactions, **4:30**

Used to facilitate current transactions, Section  
3(a)(3) exemption, **4:30**

**COMMODITY FUTURES MODERNIZATION  
ACT (CFMA)**

Securities, **1:25**

**COMMODITY FUTURES TRADING  
COMMISSION (CFTC)**

Securities, **1:23**

**COMMODITY-LINKED HYBRID  
INSTRUMENTS**

Debt offerings in U.S., **4:48**

**COMMODITY-LINKED WARRANTS**

Debt offerings in U.S., **4:48**

## COMMODITY POOLS

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 102,  
**10:126**

## COMMON STOCK

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:156, 3:167**

## COMMUNICATIONS

Blue Sky Law, communications between states,  
**15:33**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:108, 2:109**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

## COMPENSATION

Investment advisers, **14:13, 14:50**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## COMPLAINTS

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:95**

## COMPLIANCE

Global offerings, noncompliance with safe harbor  
provisions, **10:136**

Tender and exchange offers

Large trader reporting, **11:67, 11:72**

Registered broker-dealers, **11:72**

## COMPUTERS

Broker-dealers, Internet referrals and web links,  
**13:13**

## CONCURRENT U.S. AND INTERNATIONAL OFFERINGS

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:106**

## CONDITIONS

**Global Offerings** (this index)

**Private Placement** (this index)

Regulation S, **9:7 to 9:9**

## CONDUCT, CODE OF

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:131**

## CONFIDENTIALITY

Institutional investment managers, beneficial  
ownership reporting, **11:40**

Large trader Form 13H information, **11:63**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:15**

Tender and exchange offers, **11:40**

## CONFIRMATION

Accounting and financial matters, **7:42**

Broker-dealers, antifraud regulation, **13:164**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:85, 2:97, 2:102**

## CONFLICTING FOREIGN LAW

Investment advisers, **14:8**

## CONFLICT OF INTEREST

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

Canadian MJSD, **12:118**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

Trust Indenture Act, **4:43**

## CONSOLIDATED SUPERVISED ENTITIES (CSEs)

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

## CONSOLIDATION AND PROPORTIONATE CONSOLIDATION

Accounting and financial matters. **Accounting  
and Financial Matters** (this index)

## CONSPIRACY

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:185**

## CONSTITUTIONAL MATTERS

Large trader Form 13H filing with SEC, **11:63**

## CONSTRUCTION AND INTERPRETATION

Blue sky laws, construing “public offering”  
under Martin Act, **15:51**

Listing requirements, **3:30**

## CONTINUED LISTING STANDARDS

Generally, **3:11, 3:21**

Notice of failure to meet standards, **3:201**

## CONTINUOUS DISCLOSURE

Canadian MJSD, **12:141**

## CONTRACTS AND AGREEMENTS

Investment contracts, generally, **1:19**

Private placement, contractual restrictions, **5:58  
et seq.**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:8, 2:9**

## CONTRIBUTION FOR LIABILITIES

Global offerings, **10:9**

## CONTRIBUTION-IN-KIND

Accounting and financial matters, **7:41**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:74**

## CONTROLLING SHAREHOLDER

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:89**

## CONVERTIBLE DEBT SECURITIES

CEA considerations, **4:51**

Listing on national exchange, **4:52**

Mandatorily convertible securities, **4:49 to 4:52**

National exchange listing, **4:52**

Preemption of state law, **4:51**

Registration, **4:50**

Regulation S, Rule 903, issuer safe harbor, **9:16**

State law, **4:51**

## COOLING OFF

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:51, 7:52**

## **COORDINATED STATE REVIEW (CER-1)**

Application for, **App. 15B**

## **CORPORATE GOVERNANCE**

Listing requirements  
 American Stock Exchange, **3:15**  
 Financial reporting, **3:31, 3:32**  
 New York Stock Exchange, **3:14, 3:15**  
**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **CORPORATE LAW**

**Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

## **COSTS AND EXPENSES**

Blue Sky Law, **15:27, 15:28**

## **CREDIT REGULATION**

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

## **CRIMINAL PENALTIES AND SANCTIONS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **CRITICAL ACCOUNTING POLICIES AND ESTIMATE**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **CROSS-BORDER “BOUGHT DEALS”**

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD),  
**12:80**

## **CROSS-BORDER BUSINESS COMBINATIONS**

Accounting and financial matters  
 Accommodation, foreign targets, **7:179**  
 Age of pro forma information, **7:182**  
 Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD)  
 alternatives, **12:85 to 12:87**

## **CROSS-REFERENCING**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, 7:209**

## **CROSS TRANSACTIONS BY AGENCY**

Investment advisers, **14:49**

## **CURE**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, 3:99**

## **CURRENCY**

**Accounting and Financial Matters** (this index)

## **CURRENT REPORTS**

Exchange Act, **6:25**  
**Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, 6:115**

## **CUSTODY**

Broker-dealers, **13:51 to 13:55**

## **CUSTODY OF CLIENT FUNDS AND SECURITIES**

Investment advisers, **14:46**

## **DEALER AGREEMENT**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
 U.S., **2:11**

## **DEALERS**

See **Broker-Dealers** (this index)

## **DEALERS’ EXEMPTION**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
 U.S., **2:98**

## **DEALER-TRADER**

Distinguished from dealer, **13:23**

## **DEBT**

See also **Securities** (this index)  
 Guaranteed debt, Regulation S, Rule 903, issuer  
 safe harbor, **9:15**  
 Investment grade debt, global offerings, Regula-  
 tion M, Rule 101, **10:90**

## **DEBTHOLDER RIGHTS**

Trust Indenture Act, **4:46**

## **DEBT OFFERINGS**

Generally, **4:1 et seq.**  
 See also **Bank Securities; Commercial Paper;**  
**Multinational Development Banks; Shelf**  
**Registration; Sovereigns; Trust Indenture**  
**Act** (this index)  
 Foreign governments, securities issued by. See  
**Sovereigns** (this index)  
**Global Offerings** (this index)  
 Multinational organizations, securities issued by.  
**Sovereigns** (this index)  
 Political subdivisions, securities issued by.  
**Sovereigns** (this index)  
 Regulation S, **9:12, 9:39**

## **DEBT SECURITIES**

See also **Securities** (this index)  
 Canadian MJSD, **12:92**  
 Regulation S, **9:16, 9:24**

## **DEBT SERVICE COVERAGE**

Blue sky laws, public offering of securities by  
 foreign issuers, **15:30**

## **DEFAULT**

Trust Indenture Act, **4:45**

## **DEFECTS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, 3:99**

## **DEFENSE ATTORNEYS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, 6:165**

## **DEFINITIONS**

American Depositary Receipts, **8:2**  
**Blue Sky Law** (this index)  
**Broker-Dealers** (this index)  
 Canadian MJSD, **12:90**  
 Debt securities, **9:24**  
 Designated offshore securities market, **9:25**  
 Distribution, **10:69**

**DEFINITIONS—Cont'd**

Distribution compliance period, **9:26**  
 Distributor, **9:27**  
 Domestic issuer and foreign issuer, **9:28**  
 Foreign issuer, **9:28**  
 Investment advisers, **14:10 to 14:13**  
 Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD),  
**12:2**  
 Offering restrictions, **9:29**  
**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer**  
**into U.S.** (this index)  
 Reasonable investigation, **2:152**  
 Reporting issuer, **9:30**  
 Rule 100, **10:67**  
 Sale, **15:10**  
**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)  
 Scope of the act provisions, **15:10**  
 Securities, **1:13**  
 Security, **15:9**  
 Substantial U.S. market interest, **9:31**  
 Tender offers, **11:77**  
 U.S. person, **9:32**

**DELIVERY**

Global offerings, **10:17**  
 Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD),  
**12:112, 12:114**  
 Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
 U.S., **2:83 to 2:100, 2:102**

**DE MINIMIS**

Broker-dealers, exception, **13:58 to 13:80**  
 Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101,  
**10:104**  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:82**

**DEPOSIT, BANK CERTIFICATES OF**

See **Securities** (this index)

**DEPOSITARY RECEIPTS**

See **American Depositary Receipts** (this index)

**DERIVATIVE AND NONDERIVATIVE  
SECURITIES**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:79**  
 Section 16(a) reporting, beneficial ownership,  
**11:20**  
 Securities, **1:22**

**DESIGN**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:73**

**DESIGNATED EXAMINING AUTHORITY**

Broker-dealers, **13:139**

**DESIGNATED OFFSHORE SECURITIES  
MARKET**

Regulation S, **9:25**

**DESTRUCTION OF RECORDS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:182**

**DEVELOPMENT BANKS**

Exchange Act, **6:27**

**DEVIATIONS**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
 U.S., **2:185**

**DILUTION**

Blue Sky Law, **15:21**

**DIRECT CONTACTS**

See **Broker-Dealers** (this index)

**DIRECTED SELLING EFFORTS**

Regulation S, **9:9**

**DIRECT ISSUANCE PLANS**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 102,  
**10:130**

**DIRECTORS AND OFFICERS**

Blue Sky Law, loans to, **15:23**  
**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)  
 Section 16 reporting, beneficial ownership, **11:16**

**DISCIPLINARY ACTS AND MATTERS**

Investment advisers, **14:48**  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:23, 7:25**

**DISCLOSURES**

Accounting  
 Banking and insurance companies, **7:284**  
 Derivatives, **7:280**  
 Financial statements, **7:121 et seq.**  
 Illegal acts, **7:45**  
 Income taxes, ASC 740, **7:129**  
 Mining reserves and depletion, disclosure,  
**7:286**  
 New accounting rules, **7:186**  
 Oil and gas full cost ceiling test, **7:285**  
 Operating and financial review prospects  
 (MD&A), **7:190, 7:241**  
 SEC disclosure requirements, **7:272, 7:273**  
 Specialized industries, **7:283 to 7:286**  
 Stock compensation disclosures, ASC 718,  
**7:128**  
 U.K. GAAP and market risk disclosures, **7:273**  
 United Kingdom, Item 18 disclosures, **7:310**  
 American Depositary Receipts, **8:21**  
 Banking and insurance companies, **7:284**  
**Bids and Bidding** (this index)  
 Blue Sky Law, **15:29**  
 Financial statements, **7:121 et seq.**  
 Global offerings, **10:16, 10:60, 10:147, 10:156**  
 Illegal acts, **7:45**  
 Income taxes, ASC 740, **7:129**



## **DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

Iran Threat Reduction Act, new SEC disclosure requirements, **6:13.60**  
 Listing equity securities in U.S., **3:15, 3:32**  
 Mine safety, SEC disclosure requirements, **6:23.60**  
 Mining reserves and depletion, disclosure, **7:286**  
 New accounting rules, **7:186**  
 Oil and gas full cost ceiling test, **7:285**  
 Private placement, **5:27, 5:29**  
 Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:112, 2:114, 2:167**  
**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)  
 SEC disclosure requirements, **6:23.60, 7:272, 7:273**  
 Section 16(a) filings, disclosure of delinquent filings, **11:23**  
 Sovereigns, **4:12**  
 Specialized industries, **7:283 to 7:286**  
 Stock compensation disclosures, ASC 718, **7:128**  
**Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)  
 Trust Indenture Act, **4:38**  
 U.K. GAAP and market risk disclosures, **7:273**  
 United Kingdom, Item 18 disclosures, **7:310**

## **DISCRETION**

Tender and exchange offers, exercise by large trader, **11:49**

## **DISTRIBUTION**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:68, 10:69**  
**Global Offerings** (this index)  
 Private placement, Internet offerings, **5:76**  
 Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:14**  
**Regulation S** (this index)

## **DIVIDENDS**

Blue Sky Law, public offering of securities by foreign issuers, **15:43**  
 Distribution policies, accounting and financial matters, **7:282**  
 Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:168**

## **DOCUMENTATION**

Global offerings, **10:4, 10:6**  
**Private Placement** (this index)

## **DODD-FRANK ACT (2012)**

Form PF, investment adviser reporting requirements, **14:54**  
 SEC whistleblower rules, **6:166.10**

## **DOMESTIC ISSUERS**

Regulation S, **9:11, 9:28, 9:39, 9:40**

## **DUAL EMPLOYEES**

Broker-dealers, **13:120**

## **DUE DILIGENCE**

Private placement, **5:30**  
 Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:150 to 2:154**

## **DUPLICATE ADR FACILITIES**

Generally, **8:17**

## **EARNINGS**

Latin America, capital transactions-earnings per share, **7:308**  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:109 to 6:111**

## **EARNINGS RELEASES**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:110, 6:111**

## **EDGAR**

Form SD reporting, **6:23.50**

## **EDUCATION**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:76**

## **ELECTION**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:72**

## **ELECTRONIC FILING**

EDGAR, Form SD reporting, **6:23.50**  
 Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:63**  
**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:132**

## **ELECTRONIC MEDIA**

**Internet Offerings** (this index)  
**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

## **ELECTRONIC ROAD SHOWS**

Private offerings, Internet roadshow, **5:77**  
 Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:64, 2:107**

## **ELECTRONIC SIGNATURE**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:223**

## **ELECTRONIC SIGNATURES IN GLOBAL AND NATIONAL COMMERCE ACT**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:223**

## **ELECTRONIC TRADING SYSTEMS**

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

## **EMERGING MARKETS**

Private placement, documentation, **5:59**

## **EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS**

Broker-dealers, **13:38**

## INDEX

### EMPLOYEE-SHAREHOLDER PLANS

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 102,  
**10:128**

### EMPLOYEE STOCK OFFERINGS

Private placement, **5:71**

**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer  
into U.S.** (this index)

### EMPLOYMENT

Blue Sky Law, loans to, **15:23**

Broker-dealers, **13:19, 13:22**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

SEC whistleblower rules under Dodd-Frank Act,  
**6:166.10**

### ENFORCEMENT

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

Investment advisers, **14:57 to 14:59**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act**, **6:174 to 6:176**

### ENGAGING IN BUSINESS

Defined, **14:12**

### ENTRY

Listing requirements, **3:24**

### ENVIRONMENTAL DISCLOSURES

Accounting and financial matters, **7:249**

### EQUITY

Blue Sky Law, public offering of securities by  
foreign issuers, fair, just, and equitable stan-  
dard, **15:19**

**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer  
into U.S.** (this index)

### EQUITY COMPENSATION PLANS

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002**, **3:157, 3:168**

### EQUITY INVESTEEES

Accounting and financial matters, **7:150, 7:151**

### EQUITY OFFERINGS

**Global Offerings** (this index)

Regulation S, **9:12, 9:40**

### EQUITY SECURITIES

See also **Listing Equity Securities in U.S.** (this  
index)

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

Section 16 reporting, beneficial ownership, **11:18**

Self-tenders, issuer purchases of own equity  
securities, **11:190 to 11:193**

Tender and exchange offers, **11:18, 11:90**

### ERISA

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002**, **6:185**

### ESTIMATE

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:88**

### ESTIMATE—Cont'd

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

### ETHICS, CODE OF

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

### EUROPE

Accounting and financial matters, **7:310**

### EUROS

Reporting issues concerning

Accounting and financial matters, **7:138, 7:139**

### EVALUATION

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

### EVIDENCE

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act**, **6:64, 6:80**

### EXAMINING AUTHORITY

Broker-dealers, **13:139**

### EXCEPTIONS, EXEMPTIONS, AND EXCLUSIONS

Beneficial ownership reporting, Section 16(a),  
**11:22**

**Blue Sky Laws** (this index)

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

**Commercial Paper** (this index)

**Cross-Border Business Combination Rules**  
(this index)

**Global Offerings** (this index)

**Investment Advisers** (this index)

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD),  
**12:17, 12:147**

Private placement, **5:3**

**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer  
into U.S.** (this index)

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

Securities, **1:30**

**Securities Exchange Act (1934)** (this index)

**Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

Trust Indenture Act, **4:36**

### EXCHANGE

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:99**

### EXCHANGE ACT

See **Securities Exchange Act (1934)** (this index)

### EXCHANGE OFFERS

See also **Tender and Exchange Offers** (this  
index)

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:85**

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD),  
**12:7, 12:9, 12:26**

Private placement, documentation, **5:64**

**Self-Tender** (this index)

## **EXCLUSIONS**

See **Exceptions, Exemptions, and Exclusions** (this index)

## **EXECUTIVE SESSIONS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:45, 3:48**

## **EXEMPTIONS**

See **Exceptions, Exemptions, and Exclusions** (this index)

## **EXERCISES OF SECURITIES**

Global offerings, Regulation M  
Rule 101, **10:100**  
Rule 102, **10:121**

## **EXHIBITS**

Blue Sky Law, **15:38**  
Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD),  
**12:17**  
Sovereigns, **4:15**

## **EXISTING SHARES**

American Depositary Receipts, **8:23 to 8:26**

## **EXON-FLORIO AMENDMENT**

Tender and exchange offers, **11:185 to 11:187**

## **EXPENSES**

Blue Sky Law, **15:27, 15:28**

## **EXPERIENCE**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:125**

## **EXPERTS AND EXPERTISE**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **EXPORT SALES**

Accounting and financial matters, **7:282**

## **“EXXON CAPITAL” EXCHANGE OFFERS**

Multijurisdictional disclosure system (MJSD),  
financing statements, **12:32**

## **FACE-AMOUNT CERTIFICATES OR SECURITIES**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:92**

## **FAIR, JUST, AND EQUITABLE STANDARD**

Blue Sky Law, public offering of securities by  
foreign issuers, **15:19**

## **FAIR MARKET VALUE**

Institutional investment manager reporting, Sec-  
tion 13(f) securities, **11:37**

## **FAIRNESS OPINIONS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:74**

## **FALSE CERTIFICATION**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:45**

## **FALSE OR MISLEADING MEASURES**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:96**

## **FAMILY OFFICE RULE**

Investment advisers, **14:19 to 14:21**

## **FEDERAL DE MINIMIS EXEMPTION**

Investment advisers, exemptions from SEC  
registration, **14:23 to 14:25**

## **FEES**

**Listing Requirements** (this index)  
Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:147**

## **FINAL PROSPECTUS**

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD),  
**12:99**  
Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:83 to 2:100**

## **FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING STANDARDS BOARD (FASB)**

Generally, **7:6**  
Public Company Accounting Oversight Board  
(PCAOB), **7:7, 7:33**

## **FINANCIAL MATTERS**

See **Accounting and Financial Matters** (this  
index)

## **FINANCIAL SERVICES AGREEMENT**

WTO, exemptions for foreign broker-dealers,  
**13:116**

## **FINDERS**

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

## **FINRA RULE 5123**

Disclosure of private placement documents by  
member firms, **5:29**

## **FISCAL AGENCIES**

Private placement, agreements for offerings, **5:61**

## **FIXED ASSET VALUATIONS**

Accounting and financial matters, **7:290**

## **FLOWBACK**

Tender offers, flowback in international exchange  
offers—foreign targets, **11:152**

## **FORCE MAJEURE CLAUSE**

Global offerings, **10:8**

## **FOR COMPENSATION**

Investment advisers, **14:13**

## **FOREIGN APPLICANTS**

Broker-dealers, **13:126**

## **FOREIGN ASSOCIATED PERSONS**

Broker-dealers, **13:99**

## **FOREIGN BANKS**

Securities of, **4:24**

**FOREIGN BROKER-DEALERS**

See **Broker-Dealers** (this index)

**FOREIGN CORRUPT PRACTICES ACT**

Accounting and financial matters, **7:106**

Exchange Act, **6:186**

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:68**

**FOREIGN GOVERNMENTS**

See **Sovereigns** (this index)

**FOREIGN INTEGRATED DISCLOSURE SYSTEM, FORM 20-F**

Exchange Act, **6:28**

**FOREIGN INVESTMENT ADVISORY AFFILIATES**

See **Investment Advisers** (this index)

**FOREIGN ISSUER**

See also **Global Offerings; Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

**American Depositary Receipts** (this index)

**Blue Sky Laws** (this index)

**Employee Stock Offerings** (this index)

Regulation S

Definitions, **9:28**

Resales in U.S. or to U.S. persons, **9:39**

Rights offerings by foreign issuer, **9:46**

Rule 903, issuer safe harbor, **9:11, 9:12**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

Trust Indenture Act, **4:47**

**FOREIGN LAW**

Canadian securities law and Canadian MJSD, **12:89 et seq.**

**FOREIGN OFFERINGS**

See **Regulation S** (this index)

**FOREIGN PERSONS**

Broker-dealers exemptions, temporarily present in U.S., **13:108**

**FOREIGN PRIVATE ISSUER**

Generally, **2:117**

Benefits of status, **2:116**

Change of status, **2:118**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:115 et seq.**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**FOREIGN PUBLICITY**

Global offerings, **10:21**

**FOREIGN REGISTRATION**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **7:29 to 7:31**

**FOREIGN RESIDENCE**

Broker-dealers, U.S. persons resident abroad, **13:109**

**FOREIGN TARGETS**

**Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

**FOREIGN TRUSTEES**

Trust Indenture Act, **4:41**

**FORFEITURE**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:149**

**FORMER RULE 434, SIA APPROACH**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:93**

**FORMER TRADING PRACTICES RULES**

Global offerings, Regulation M, **10:65**

**FORMS**

Blue sky laws

Form D filing requirements, **15:46**

Form U-1, **15:37**

Form 3, Section 16(a) beneficial ownership reporting, **11:19**

Form 4, tender and exchange offers, **11:19**

Form 5, tender and exchange offers, **11:19**

Form ADV, registration and amendments, **14:39**

Form ADV-W, withdrawal of registration, **14:41**

Form BD, **13:124**

Form BDW, **13:126**

Form D

Filing requirements, **15:46**

Notice of sale, **5:24**

Form F-6

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:129**

Securities Act registration, **8:19 to 8:21**

Form F-1. **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

Form F-2. **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

Form F-3. **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

Form F-4, tender offers. **Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

Form F-7, rights offerings, **12:4**

Form F-8, business combinations and exchange offers, **12:5 to 12:8**

Form F-9, investment grade securities, **12:10**

Form F-10, general registration form, **12:11**

Form F-11. **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

Form F-80, alternative for exchange offers and business combinations, **12:9**

Form F-80, business combinations and exchange offers, **12:5 to 12:8**

## **FORMS—Cont'd**

- Form 20-F, foreign integrated disclosure system, **6:28**
- Form 20-F, Item 5, Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **7:190**
- Form 20-F, Item 9, accounting and financial matters, **7:191 to 7:258**
- Form 40-F. **Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD)** (this index)
- Form 12h-6, Exchange Act registration, **6:29.20, 6:29.30**
- Form 8-K
  - Exchange Act filing requirement, **6:23.70**
  - Listing requirements, **3:201**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:109, 6:117**
- Form 10-K, Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:113**
- Form PF, investment adviser reporting requirements under Dodd-Frank Act, **14:54**
- Form 10-Q, Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:113**
- Form S-8. **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)
- Form U-1, Blue Sky Law, **15:37**

## **FORTUNE 500 SUMMARY (2003)**

- Accounting and Financial Matters** (this index)

## **FORWARD-LOOKING INFORMATION**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:212**

## **FORWARD-LOOKING QUANTITATIVE RECONCILIATION**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:98**

## **FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS**

- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:66**

## **FOUR FIRMS' APPROACH**

- See **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

## **FRAUD**

- See also **Antifraud Provisions and Regulation** (this index)
- Global offerings, Regulation M, **10:177**
- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:104**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:177, 6:184, 6:185**

## **FREE WRITING PROSPECTUS**

- Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

## **FREEZE PAYMENTS**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:174**

## **GAAS (GENERALLY ACCEPTED AUDITING STANDARDS)**

- Accounting and Financial Matters** (this index)

## **GENERAL CONDITIONS**

- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:6**
- Regulation S, **9:7 to 9:9**

## **GENERAL EXPENSE LIMITATIONS**

- Blue Sky Law, **15:28**

## **GENERAL REGISTRATION FORM, FORM F-10**

- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:11**

## **GENESIS**

- Blue Sky Law, **15:2**

## **GLOBAL OFFERINGS**

- Generally, **10:1 et seq.**
- Acquisitions, **10:85**
- Actively-traded reference securities, **10:117**
- Actively traded securities, **10:89**
- Affiliated purchasers, **10:74**
- Antifraud provisions, **10:66, 10:177**
- Antimanipulation rules. Regulation M, below in this heading
- Asset-backed securities, **10:90**
- At-the-market offerings, **10:86**
- Basket transactions, **10:102**
- Bids. Regulation M, below in this heading
- Bonds, restricted and unrestricted forms, **10:118**
- Brokers, dealers, and others, **10:73**
- Carrying over stabilizing bid, **10:143**
- Cease and desist orders, status of, **10:159**
- Certificates issued by open-end management investment company or unit investment trust, face-amount of, **10:92**
- Choice of law, **10:11**
- Closed-end investment companies, **10:125**
- Commodity pools, redemptions by, **10:126**
- Conditions
  - Equity offerings, NASD requirements, **10:55**
  - Exchange Act Rule 10b-18, safe harbor, **10:134, 10:135**
  - Regulation M
    - Exchange Act Rule 10b-18, safe harbor, **10:134, 10:135**
    - Rule 103, Nasdaq passive market making, **10:138**
    - Rule 104, stabilization and other syndicate activities, **10:146**
  - Rule 103, Nasdaq passive market making, **10:138**
  - Rule 104, stabilization and other syndicate activities, **10:146**
- Contribution for liabilities, **10:9**
- Debt, investment grade debt, **10:90**
- Debt offerings
  - Regulation M, **10:180**



**GLOBAL OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

- Debt offerings—Cont'd
  - U.S. tax rules, **10:181**
- Definitions, **10:67, 10:69**
- Delivery, prospectus, **10:17**
- De minimis transactions, **10:104**
- Derivative securities, **10:79**
- Direct issuance plans, **10:130**
- Disclosure, **10:16, 10:60, 10:147, 10:156**
- Distribution. Regulation M, below in this heading
- Documentation, underwriting arrangements
  - U.S. issuers, **10:6**
  - U.S. public offering, **10:4**
- Employee-shareholder plans, **10:128**
- Equity offerings
  - Generally, **10:1 et seq.**
  - Choice of law, **10:11**
  - Conditions, **10:55**
  - Contribution for liabilities, **10:9**
  - Delivery, prospectus, **10:17**
  - Disclosure, **10:16, 10:60**
  - Documentation, underwriting arrangements,
    - U.S. issuers, **10:6**
  - Documentation, underwriting arrangements,
    - U.S. public offering, **10:4**
  - Force majeure clause, **10:8**
  - Foreign issuers
    - Private placement, U.S., below in this subheading
  - Underwriters and Underwriting** (this index)
- Foreign publicity, **10:21**
- Indemnification, **10:10**
- Installment payment arrangements, **10:12**
- Joint and several, several vs. joint and several underwriting obligations, **10:7**
- Liability, **10:18, 10:61**
- Lock-ups, **10:32**
- NASD requirements
  - Allowances, **10:36**
  - Anti-dilution provision, **10:51**
  - Beneficial interest, **10:45**
  - Compensation of underwriter, **10:30**
  - Compliance, **10:40**
  - Concessions, **10:36**
  - Conditions, **10:55**
  - Corporate financing rule, **10:23 to 10:34**
  - Definitions, IPOs of equity, **10:42 to 10:45**
  - Discounts, **10:36**
  - Distribution information, **10:56**
  - Documentation requiring compliance, **10:40**
  - Exceptions, **10:47**
  - Exemptions, **10:48 to 54**
  - Exemptions from filing and review, **10:26**
  - Exemptive authority, **10:34**

**GLOBAL OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

- Equity offerings—Cont'd
- NASD requirements—Cont'd
  - Fair and reasonable underwriting, **10:23 to 10:34**
  - Filing, **10:24 to 10:29**
  - FINRA clearance, **10:27**
  - Fixed price offerings, **10:35 to 10:40**
  - IPOs of equity, **10:41 to 10:56**
  - Issuer-directed securities, **10:50**
  - Lock-ups, **10:32**
  - New issue rule, **10:41 to 10:56**
  - Nonmembers, **10:39**
  - Papilsky rules, **10:35 to 10:40**
  - Pricing information, **10:29**
  - Proceeds directed to FINRA member, **10:33**
  - Prohibitions, **10:31, 10:46**
  - Related person transactions, **10:38**
  - Relief, **10:54**
  - Restricted person, **10:44**
  - Securities taken in trade, **10:37**
  - Standby purchasers, **10:52**
  - Submitting pricing information, **10:29**
  - Undersubscribed offerings, **10:53**
  - Underwriter compensation, **10:30**
  - Underwriter compensation and arrangements, **10:23 to 10:34**
  - Underwriting activity report, **10:28**
- Papilsky Rules, **10:35 to 10:40**
- Private placement, U.S.
  - Generally, **10:57 et seq.**
  - Disclosure, **10:60**
  - Foreign issuers, generally, **10:91 et seq.**
  - Liability, **10:61**
  - Publicity, **10:62**
  - Underwriting arrangements, **10:59**
- Prospectus and statement, **10:15 to 10:17**
- Prospectus delivery, **10:17**
- Prospectus disclosure, **10:16**
- Publicity, **10:20, 10:21, 10:62**
- Registration
  - Generally, **10:14 et seq.**
  - Delivery, prospectus, **10:17**
  - Disclosure, prospectus, **10:16**
  - Foreign publicity, **10:21**
  - Liability, **10:18**
  - Number of shares to register, **10:14**
  - Prospectus and statement, **10:15 to 10:17**
  - Prospectus delivery, **10:17**
  - Prospectus disclosure, **10:16**
  - Publicity, **10:20, 10:21**
  - Restriction on publicity in U.S., **10:20**
  - Shelf registration, **10:19**
  - Short forms, **10:19**
  - Statement and prospectus, **10:15 to 10:17**

## GLOBAL OFFERINGS—Cont'd

Equity offerings—Cont'd  
 Restriction on publicity in U.S., **10:20**  
 Several vs. joint and several underwriting obligations, **10:7**  
 Shelf registration, **10:19**  
 Short forms, **10:19**  
 Statement and prospectus, **10:15 to 10:17**  
 Success fees, **10:13**  
 Underwriting arrangements, **10:3 to 10:13, 10:59**  
 U.S. public offering, generally, **10:2 et seq.**  
 Excepted securities, **10:116 to 10:118**  
 Exceptions and exemptions  
 Authority as exemptive, **10:105, 10:131**  
 Regulation M, below in this heading  
 Securities, exempted, **10:91**  
 Status of exemptions, **10:158**  
 Exchange offers, **10:85**  
 Exercises of securities, **10:100, 10:121**  
 Face-amount certificates or securities issued by open-end management investment company or unit investment trust, **10:92**  
 Facilitation of distribution, **10:97 to 10:99, 10:120**  
 Force majeure clause, **10:8**  
 Foreign issuers  
 Equity offerings. See Equity offerings, above in this heading  
**Underwriters and Underwriting** (this index)  
 Foreign publicity, **10:21**  
 Former trading practices rules, **10:65**  
 Increasing stabilizing bid, **10:144**  
 Indemnification, **10:10**  
 Initiating stabilization, **10:141**  
 Injunctions, status of, **10:159**  
 Installment payment arrangements, **10:12**  
 Interpretations, status of, **10:158**  
 Investment, closed-end investment companies, **10:125**  
 Investment grade debt, **10:90**  
 Issuers and selling securityholders, **10:109**  
 Joint and several underwriting, **10:7**  
 Liability, **10:18, 10:61**  
 Limited partnerships, redemptions by, **10:126**  
 Maintaining stabilizing bid, **10:143**  
 Management investment company, face-amount certificates or securities issued by, **10:92**  
 Maximum caps on stabilizing levels, **10:142**  
 Mergers, **10:85**  
 Nasdaq, Rule 103, **10:137, 10:138**  
 No-action positions, status of, **10:158**  
 Noncompliance with safe harbor, **10:136**  
 Notification, **10:147**  
 Odd-lot transactions, **10:103, 10:124**

## GLOBAL OFFERINGS—Cont'd

Open-end management investment company, face-amount certificates or securities issued by, **10:92**  
 Open market plans, **10:129**  
 Orders to cease and desist, status of, **10:159**  
 Papilsky Rules, **10:35 to 10:40**  
 Partnerships, redemptions by, **10:126**  
 Passive market, Rule 103, **10:137, 10:138**  
 Payment arrangements, **10:12**  
 Preferred stock, **10:90**  
 Preliminary note and definitions, Rule 100, **10:66, 10:67**  
 Private placement, U.S. See Equity offerings, above in this heading  
 Prospective underwriters, **10:72**  
 Prospectus and statement, **10:15 to 10:17**  
 Prospectus delivery, **10:17**  
 Prospectus disclosure, **10:16**  
 Publicity, **10:20, 10:21, 10:62**  
 Public offering, Rule 105, **10:149**  
 Recordkeeping, **10:147**  
 Redemptions by commodity pools or limited partnerships, **10:126**  
 Reducing stabilizing bid, **10:143**  
 Reference securities, **10:78, 10:117**  
 Registration. See Equity offerings, above in this heading  
 Regulation M  
 Generally, **10:63 et seq.**  
 Acquisitions, **10:85**  
 Actively-traded reference securities, **10:117**  
 Actively traded securities, **10:89**  
 Affiliated purchasers, **10:74**  
 Antifraud, **10:177**  
 Antifraud provisions, **10:66**  
 Antimanipulation provisions, **10:66**  
 Asset-backed securities, **10:90**  
 At-the-market offerings, **10:86**  
 Basket transactions, **10:102**  
 Bids. See Rule 104, stabilization and other syndicate activities, below in this heading  
 Bona fide prepricing covering purchases, **10:154**  
 Brokers, dealers, and others, **10:73**  
 Carrying over stabilizing bid, **10:143**  
 Cease and desist orders, status of, **10:159**  
 Certificates or securities issued by open-end management investment company or unit investment trust, **10:92**  
 Civil liability, **10:177**  
 Closed-end investment companies, **10:125**  
 Commodity pools, redemptions by, **10:126**  
 Conditions, general conditions, **10:146**  
 Contracts, **10:178**  
 Debt, investment grade, **10:90**

**GLOBAL OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

Regulation M—Cont'd  
 Debt offerings, **10:180**  
 Definitions, **10:66, 10:69, 10:70**  
 De minimis transactions, **10:104**  
 Derivative securities, **10:79**  
 Direct issuance plans, **10:130**  
 Disclosure, **10:147, 10:156**  
 Distribution defined, **10:69**  
 Distribution participants, activities by, **10:68**  
 Distribution purchasers, activities by, **10:68**  
 Employee-shareholder plans, **10:128**  
 Excepted activities, Rule 105, **10:153 to 10:56**  
 Excepted securities, **10:116 to 10:118**  
 Exceptions  
   Rule 101. See Rule 101, below in this subheading  
   Rule 102. See Rule 102, below in this subheading  
   Rule 104, stabilization and other syndicate activities, **10:148**  
 Exchange offers, **10:85**  
 Exempted securities, **10:91**  
 Exemptions, status of, **10:158**  
 Exemptive authority, **10:105, 10:131**  
 Exercises of securities, **10:100, 10:121**  
 Face-amount certificates or securities issued by open-end management investment company or unit investment trust, **10:92**  
 Facilitation of distribution, **10:97 to 10:99, 10:120**  
 Former trading practices rules, **10:65**  
 General conditions, **10:146**  
 Increasing stabilizing bid, **10:144**  
 Independent trading unit purchases, **10:155**  
 Initiating stabilization, **10:141**  
 Injunctions, status of, **10:159**  
 Interpretations, status of, **10:158**  
 Investment companies, closed-end, **10:125**  
 Investment company purchases, **10:156**  
 Investment grade debt, **10:90**  
 Issuers and selling securityholders, **10:109**  
 Limited partnerships, redemptions by, **10:126**  
 Maintaining stabilizing bid, **10:143**  
 Management investment company, face-amount certificates or securities issued by, **10:92**  
 Maximum caps on stabilizing levels, **10:142**  
 Mergers, **10:85**  
 Naked short shares, **10:177**  
 Nasdaq, Rule 103, Nasdaq passive market making during Rule 101 restricted period, **10:137, 10:138**  
 No-action positions, status of, **10:158**  
 Noncompliance with safe harbor, **10:136**  
 Notification, **10:147**

**GLOBAL OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

Regulation M—Cont'd  
 Odd-lot transactions, **10:103, 10:124**  
 Offerings, **10:150**  
 Open-end management investment company, face-amount certificates or securities issued by, **10:92**  
 Open market plans, **10:129**  
 Orders to cease and desist, status of, **10:159**  
 Partnerships, redemptions by, **10:126**  
 Passive market making, Nasdaq, Rule 103, **10:137, 10:138**  
 Plans, Rule 102, **10:127 to 10:130**  
 Preferred stock, **10:90**  
 Preliminary note and definitions, Rule 100, **10:66, 10:67**  
 Prospective underwriters, **10:72**  
 Prospectus, **10:156**  
 Public offering, Rule 105, short sales before public offering, **10:149**  
 Recordkeeping, **10:147**  
 Redemptions by commodity pools or limited partnerships, **10:126**  
 Reducing stabilizing bid, **10:143**  
 Reference securities, **10:78, 10:117**  
 Registration, **10:177**  
 Reinstating stabilizing bid, **10:143**  
 Research, **10:94**  
 Restricted period  
   Rule 102, **10:113, 10:114**  
   Rule 101. See Rule 101, below in this subheading  
   Rule 105, short sales before public offering, **10:152**  
 Rule 101  
   Generally, **10:68 et seq.**  
   Acquisitions, restricted period, **10:85**  
   Actively traded securities, **10:89**  
   Activities subject to rule, **10:75**  
   Affiliated purchasers, **10:74**  
   Asset-backed securities, **10:90**  
   At-the-market offerings, restricted period, **10:86**  
   Basket transactions, **10:102**  
   Brokers, dealers, and others, **10:73**  
   Certificates or securities issued by open-end management investment company or unit investment trust, **10:92**  
   Debt, investment grade, **10:90**  
   Definitions, **10:69, 10:70**  
   De minimis transactions, **10:104**  
   Derivative securities, **10:79**  
   Distribution defined, **10:69**  
   Distribution participants, activities by, **10:68**  
   Distribution purchasers, activities by, **10:68**  
   Excepted activities, generally, **10:93 et seq.**

**GLOBAL OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

## Regulation M—Cont'd

## Rule 101—Cont'd

- Exceptions, generally, **10:87 et seq.**
- Exchange offers, restricted period, **10:85**
- Exempted securities, **10:91**
- Exemptive authority, **10:105**
- Exercises of securities, **10:100**
- Face-amount certificates or securities issued by open-end management investment company or unit investment trust, **10:92**
- Facilitation of distribution, **10:97 to 10:99**
- Investment grade debt, **10:90**
- Management investment company, face-amount certificates or securities issued by, **10:92**
- Mergers, restricted period, **10:85**
- Nasdaq passive market making during Rule 101 restricted period, Rule 103, **10:137, 10:138**
- Odd-lot transactions, **10:103**
- Open-end management investment company, face-amount certificates or securities issued by, **10:92**
- Preferred stock, **10:90**
- Prospective underwriters, **10:72**
- Reference securities, **10:78**
- Research, **10:94**
- Restricted period
  - Generally, **10:80 et seq.**
  - Acquisitions, **10:85**
  - Application of rule, **10:83**
  - At-the-market offerings, **10:86**
  - Beginning of period, **10:81**
  - End of period, **10:82**
  - Exchange offers, **10:85**
  - Mergers, **10:85**
  - Rule 103, **10:137, 10:138**
  - Shelf-registered distributions, **10:84**
- Rule 144A securities, **10:101**
- Sell, offers to, **10:99**
- Shelf-registered distributions, **10:84**
- Solicitations of offers to buy, **10:99**
- Subject securities, **10:77**
- Transactions complying with certain other rules, **10:95**
- Underwriters, **10:71, 10:72**
- Unit investment trust, face-amount certificates or securities issued by, **10:92**
- Unsolicited transactions, **10:96**

## Rule 102

- Generally, **10:106 et seq.**
- Actively-traded reference securities, **10:117**
- Activities excepted, **10:119 et seq.**
- Activities subject to rule, **10:111**

**GLOBAL OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

## Regulation M—Cont'd

## Rule 102—Cont'd

- Affiliated purchasers, **10:110**
- Affiliated purchasers, activities by, **10:106**
- Closed-end investment companies, **10:125**
- Commodity pools, redemptions by commodity pools or limited partnerships, **10:126**
- Conditions to be met, **10:135**
- Direct issuance plans, **10:130**
- Distribution, **10:107**
- Employee-shareholder plans, **10:128**
- Excepted securities, **10:116 to 10:118**
- Exceptions, generally, **10:115 et seq.**
- Exemptive authority, **10:131**
- Exercises of securities, **10:121**
- Facilitation of distribution, **10:120**
- Investment, closed-end investment companies, **10:125**
- Issuers, activities by, **10:106**
- Issuers and selling securityholders, **10:109**
- Limited partnerships, redemptions by commodity pools or limited partnerships, **10:126**
- Market-wide trading suspension, **10:135**
- Noncompliance with safe harbor, **10:136**
- Odd-lot transactions, **10:124**
- Open market plans, **10:129**
- Partnerships, redemptions by commodity pools or limited partnerships, **10:126**
- Plans, **10:127 to 10:130**
- Redemptions by commodity pools or limited partnerships, **10:126**
- Reference securities, actively-traded reference securities, **10:117**
- Restricted period, **10:113, 10:114**
- Rule 144A securities, **10:123**
- Rule 10b-18: safe harbor for issuer stock repurchases
  - Generally, **10:132 et seq.**
  - Conditions to be met, **10:134, 10:135**
  - Market-wide trading suspension, **10:135**
  - Noncompliance, **10:136**
  - Suspension of trading, **10:135**
- Safe harbor for issuer stock repurchases. See Rule 10b-18, safe harbor for issuer stock repurchases, above in this subheading
- Securities subject to rule, **10:112**
- Selling securityholders, **10:109**
- Selling securityholders, activities by, **10:106**
- Suspension of trading, **10:135**
- Unsolicited purchases, **10:122**

- Rule 100, preliminary note and definitions, **10:66**

**GLOBAL OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

Regulation M—Cont'd

Rule 103, Nasdaq passive market making during Rule 101 restricted period, **10:137, 10:138**

Rule 104, stabilization and other syndicate activities

Generally, **10:139 et seq.**

Bid, maintaining, carrying over, reducing, or reinstating, **10:143**

Carrying over stabilizing bid, **10:143**

Conditions, general conditions, **10:146**

Disclosure, **10:147**

Exceptions, **10:148**

General conditions, **10:146**

Increasing stabilizing bid, **10:144**

Initiating stabilization, **10:141**

Levels of stabilization, generally, **10:140 et seq.**

Maintaining stabilizing bid, **10:143**

Maximum caps on stabilizing levels, **10:142**

Notification, **10:147**

Other provisions related to stabilizing levels, **10:145**

Recordkeeping, **10:147**

Reducing stabilizing bid, **10:143**

Reinstating stabilizing bid, **10:143**

Rule 105, short sales before public offering

Generally, **10:149**

Activities, **10:151**

Bona fide prepricing covering purchases, **10:154**

Excepted activities, **10:153 to 10:56**

Exemptive authority, **10:157**

Extent of restricted period, **10:152**

Independent trading unit purchases, **10:155**

Investment company purchases, **10:156**

Offerings, **10:150**

Restricted period, **10:152**

Securities, **10:151**

Trading unit purchases, **10:155**

Rule 144A securities, **10:101, 10:123**

Rule 10b-18, safe harbor for issuer stock repurchases. See Rule 102, below in this heading

Safe harbor for issuer stock repurchases. See Rule 102, above in this heading

Sales, Rule 105, short sales before public offering, **10:149**

Securities, Rule 105, short sales before public offering, **10:151**

Sell, offers to, **10:99**

Selling securityholders, **10:109**

Shelf-registered distributions, **10:84**

Short sales, **10:149 to 19:157, 10:177, 10:178**

Solicitations of offers to buy, **10:99**

**GLOBAL OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

Regulation M—Cont'd

Stabilization. See Rule 104, stabilization and other syndicate activities, above in this heading

Statutory scheme, **10:64**

Suspension of trading, **10:135**

Syndicate activities. See Rule 104, stabilization and other syndicate activities, above in this heading

Syndicate short position, **10:156**

Syndicate short sales, **10:178**

Trading unit purchases, **10:155**

Underwriters, **10:71, 10:72**

Unit investment trust, face-amount certificates or securities issued by, **10:92**

Unsolicited purchases, **10:122**

Unsolicited transactions, **10:96**

Regulation S, debt offerings, sale of bonds outside United States, **10:118**

Reinstating stabilizing bid, **10:143**

Research, **10:94**

Restricted period. See Regulation M, above in this heading

Restriction on publicity in U.S., **10:20**

Rule 100, preliminary note and definitions, **10:66**

Rule 101. See Regulation M, above in this heading

Rule 102. See Regulation M, above in this heading

Rule 103, Nasdaq passive market making during Rule 101 restricted period, **10:137, 10:138**

Rule 104, stabilization and other syndicate activities. See Regulation M, above

Rule 105, short sales before public offering. Regulation M, above

Rule 144A securities, Regulation M

Rule 101, **10:101**

Rule 102, **10:123**

Rule 10b-18, safe harbor for issuer stock repurchases. See Regulation M, above

Safe harbor for issuer stock repurchases. See Regulation M, above in this heading

Sales

Offers to sell, **10:99**

Rule 105, short sales before public offering—Regulation M, **10:149**

Securityholders selling, **10:109**

Several vs. joint and several underwriting obligations, **10:7**

Shelf-registered distributions, **10:84**

Shelf registration, **10:19**

Short forms, **10:19**

Short sales before public offering, Rule 105. Regulation M, above

Solicitations of offers to buy, **10:99**



## **GLOBAL OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

- Stabilization. See Regulation M, above in this heading
- Statement and prospectus, **10:15 to 10:17**
- Statutory scheme, **10:64**
- Success fees, underwriting arrangements, **10:13**
- Syndicate activities. See Regulation M, above in this heading
- Tax rules of U.S., debt offerings, **10:181**
- Underwriters and Underwriting** (this index)
- Unit investment trust, face-amount certificates or securities issued by, **10:92**
- Unsolicited purchases, **10:122**
- Unsolicited transactions, **10:96**
- U.S. public offering. See Equity offerings, above in this heading

## **GLOBAL SHARES**

- Listing requirements, **3:16**

## **GOING PRIVATE**

- Self-tenders, issuer purchases of its own equity securities, **11:191**

## **GOODWILL**

- Accounting and Financial Matters** (this index)

## **GOVERNING LAW**

- Global offerings, **10:11**

## **GOVERNMENT AGENCIES**

- Schedule B, issuers eligible for, **4:5**

## **GOVERNMENT CORPORATIONS**

- Schedule B, issuers eligible for, **4:4**

## **GOVERNMENT SECURITIES**

- Foreign broker-dealers, exemptions for, **13:87**

## **GRANDFATHER ISSUES**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:123**

## **GROUPS**

- Beneficial ownership reports, **11:11**

## **GUARANTEED DEBT**

- Regulation S, **9:15**

## **HARBORS**

- Regulation S, **9:6**

## **HART-SCOTT-RODINO ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT OF 1976 (HART-SCOTT ACT)**

- Generally, **11:178 to 11:184**

## **HEDGING**

- Accounting and financial matters, derivative instruments, **7:124, 7:278, 7:279**
- Private placement, Rule 144, **5:38**

## **HOME JURISDICTION DOCUMENT**

- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), Securities Act registration forms, **12:14**

## **HUMAN SERVICES**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:69**

## **HYBRID INSTRUMENTS**

- Commodity-linked hybrid instruments, **4:48**

## **HYPERINFLATIONARY ECONOMIES**

- Financial statements, **7:141 to 7:147**

## **HYPERLINKED INFORMATION**

- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:104**

## **IDENTIFICATION**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:104, 6:82**

## **IDENTITY THEFT RED FLAG PROGRAM**

- Investment advisers, **14:55**

## **ILLEGAL ACTS**

- Accounting and auditing, **7:45**

## **IMPLIED PRIVATE RIGHT OF ACTION**

- Investment advisers, **14:60**

## **IMPROPER INFLUENCE**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:176, 7:100 to 7:103**

## **INACTIVE STATUS**

- Large trader Form 13H requirements, **11:59**

## **INCOME TAXES: ASC 740**

- Disclosures, **7:129**

## **INCORPORATION**

- Blue Sky Law, **15:34**

## **INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE**

- Canadian MJSD, **12:134**

## **INDEMNIFICATION**

- Accounting and financial matters, **7:40**
- Global offerings, **10:10**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:124**

## **INDEPENDENCE**

- Generally, **7:38**
- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:29, 12:44**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **INDEPENDENT ACCOUNTANT**

- Broker-dealers, **13:143**

## **INDEXES**

- Securities, **1:27**

## **INDIVIDUAL ACCOUNT PLAN**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:139**

## INDEX

### INFORMANTS

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:183**

### INFORMATIONAL LEGENDS

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD),  
**12:15**

### INFORMATION STATEMENT

Accounting and financial matters, **7:109**  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:105**

### INJUNCTIONS

Global offerings, **10:159**

### INSIDER AND PROXY RULES

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD),  
**12:69**

### INSIDER TRADING

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)  
Canadian MJSD, **12:143**  
Investment advisers, **14:56**  
**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

### INSIGNIFICANT DEVIATIONS

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:185**

### INSPECTIONS

Investment advisers, SEC inspections, **14:58**  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **7:22, 7:30**  
Securities futures products broker-dealers,  
**13:155**

### INSTALLMENT PAYMENT ARRANGEMENTS

Global offerings, **10:12**

### INSTALLMENT RECEIPTS

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD),  
**12:79**

### INSTITUTIONAL BUYERS

See **Private Placement** (this index)

### INSTITUTIONAL INVESTMENT MANAGERS

**Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

### INSTITUTIONAL INVESTORS

Beneficial ownership reporting, Section 13(g) and  
Schedule 13G, **11:6**

### INSTRUMENTALITIES OF FOREIGN GOVERNMENTS

Schedule B, issuers eligible for, **4:17**

### INSURANCE

Broker-dealers, networking arrangements, **13:10**  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:126**  
SEC registration, exemptions from, **14:30**

### INTEGRATED AUDIT

Sarbanes-Oxley Act  
Issuer reporting and disclosure  
Internal control over financial reporting,  
**6:65**

### INTEGRATION

Private placement, **5:5, 5:25, 5:65 et seq.**  
Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., Rule 801, **2:163**  
Regulation S, nonintegration, **9:42**

### INTERACTIVE DATA REPORTING

Financial reporting. **Public Offerings of Equity  
by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

### INTEREST RATE PROTECTION TRANSACTIONS

See **Securities** (this index)

### INTERIM REPORTS AND FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Generally, **7:118, 7:234**  
Exchange Act, **6:24**  
Operating and financial review prospects  
(MD&A), **7:234, 7:270**  
Securities Exchange Act (1934), **6:24**

### INTERIM STANDARDS

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:20**

### INTERNAL AUDIT FUNCTION

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:113**

### INTERNAL AUDIT OUTSOURCING SERVICES

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:76**

### INTERNAL CONTROLS

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

### INTERNAL MEMORANDA

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:68**

### INTERNATIONAL BIDS

See **Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

### INTERNATIONAL HOLDING COMPANY STRUCTURES

Investment advisers, **14:7**

### INTERNATIONAL OFFERINGS

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:106**

### INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS

Foreign broker-dealers, exemptions for, **13:107**

### INTERNATIONAL TENDER OFFERS

See **Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

## INTERNET OFFERINGS

- Blue Sky Law, **15:41**
- Broker-dealers, Internet referrals and web links, **13:13**
- Disclosure documents, private placement, **5:76**
- Electronic distribution of disclosure documents, **5:76**
- Private placement
  - Generally, **5:73**
  - Disclosure documents, **5:76**
  - Electronic distribution of disclosure documents, **5:76**
  - Procedures, **5:74**
  - Publicity activities, **5:75**
  - Roadshows, **5:77**
- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S.—Rule 801, internet disclosure, **2:167**
- Regulation S, **9:47**
- Roadshows, private placement, **5:77**
- Tender Offers** (this index)
- Web links, broker-dealers and Internet referrals, **13:13**

## INTERPRETATIONS

- Global offerings, **10:158**

## INTERPRETATIVE GUIDANCE

- Private placement, documentation, **5:66**
- Tender and exchange offers, internet
  - Generally, **11:165 to 11:169**
  - Offshore tender offers, business combinations, and rights offerings, **11:167**
  - U.S. exempt component, **11:168**
  - U.S. issuers, **11:169**

## INTERSYNDICATE AGREEMENT

- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:10**

## INTRASTATE BUSINESSES

- Broker-dealers, exclusions and exemptions, **13:84**
- Investment advisers, exemptions from SEC registration, **14:30**

## INVENTORY

- Accounting and auditing, **7:42**

## INVESTIGATION

- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:150 to 2:154**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **7:23, 7:24, 7:28, 7:31**

## INVESTMENT ADVISERS

- Generally, **14:1 et seq.**
- Act of 1940 (Investment Advisers Act), generally, **1:7**
- Advertisements, **14:45**
- Advisory agreements, assignment of, **14:51**

## INVESTMENT ADVISERS—Cont'd

- Affiliates, registration requirements, **14:5**
- Agency cross transactions, **14:49**
- Amendments, Form ADV, **14:39**
- Antifraud provisions of regulation
  - Generally, **14:43 to 14:48**
  - Advertisements, **14:45**
  - Cash referral fees, **14:47**
  - Custody of client funds and securities, **14:46**
  - Disciplinary information, **14:48**
  - Financial and disciplinary information, **14:48**
- Assets under management, **14:27**
- Assignment of advisory agreements, **14:51**
- Authors, **14:17**
- Banks, **14:15**
- Blue Sky Law, **15:7**
- Brochure rule, **14:42**
- Broker-dealers, exclusions from definitions, **14:16**
- Business, engaging in, **14:12**
- Business development company, performance fee contract, **14:50**
- Cash referral fees, **14:47**
- Compensation, **14:13, 14:50**
- For compensation defined, **14:13**
- “Conduct and effects” approach, **14:4, 14:6 et seq.**
- Conflicting foreign law, **14:8 et seq.**
- Cross transactions by agency, **14:49**
- Custody of client funds and securities, **14:46**
- Definitions
  - Generally, **13:17, 14:10 to 14:13**
  - Business, engaging in business, **14:12**
  - Compensation, for, **14:13**
  - For compensation, **14:13**
  - Engaging in business, **14:12**
  - Exclusions from
    - Generally, **14:14 et seq.**
    - Authors, **14:17**
    - Banks, **14:15**
    - Broker-dealers, **14:16**
    - Family office, **14:19 to 14:21**
    - Other exclusions, **14:18**
    - Publishers and authors, **14:17**
  - Issuing reports or analyses concerning securities, **14:11**
  - Providing advise concerning securities, **14:11**
  - Qualified clients, **14:50**
- Disciplinary information, **14:48**
- Dodd-Frank Act reporting requirement, Form PF, **14:54**
- Enforcement, **14:57 to 14:59**
- Engaging in business, **14:12**
- Exclusions. See Definitions, above in this heading

## INVESTMENT ADVISERS—Cont'd

- Exemptions. See SEC registration, below in this heading
- Extraterritorial application of Advisers Act, “conduct and effects” approach, **14:4**
- Family office exclusion
  - Generally, **14:19**
  - Conditions for exclusion, **14:20**
  - Plan of action for family offices, **14:21**
- Federal de minimis exemption, **14:23 to 14:25**
- Financial and disciplinary information, **14:48**
- Foreign investment advisory affiliates
  - “Conducts and effects” approach, application of, **14:6 et seq.**
  - Conflicting foreign law, **14:8**
  - International holding company structures, **14:7**
  - Non-U.S. clients of unregistered foreign advisers controlled by a U.S. person, **14:9**
  - Registered investment advisers, generally, **14:5 et seq.**
- Form ADV, registration and amendments, **14:39**
- Form ADV-W, withdrawal of registration, **14:41**
- Form PF, **14:54**
- Identity theft red flag program, **14:55**
- Implied private right of action, **14:60**
- Insider trading, **14:56**
- Inspections, SEC, **14:58**
- Insurance company exemptions, **14:30**
- International holding company structures, **14:7**
- Intrastate and insurance company exemptions, **14:30**
- Issuing reports or analyses concerning securities, **14:11**
- Jurisdiction, registration requirement, **14:3**
- Management, assets under, **14:27**
- Performance fees and other compensation practices, **14:50**
- Principal transactions and agency cross transactions, **14:49**
- Private investment company, performance fee contract, **14:50**
- Private right of action, implied, **14:60**
- Prohibitions on, **14:31 to 14:33**
- Providing advise concerning securities, **14:11**
- Publishers and authors, **14:17**
- Qualified clients, defined, **14:50**
- Recordkeeping, **14:53**
- Registration
  - Blue Sky Law, **15:7**
  - Form PF reporting requirements, **14:54**
  - Identity theft red flag program, **14:55**
- Process
  - Generally, **14:38 to 14:41**
  - Form ADV, **14:39**
  - SEC amendments to form ADV, **14:40**
  - Withdrawal, **14:41**

## INVESTMENT ADVISERS—Cont'd

- Registration—Cont'd
  - Requirements, generally, **14:2 et seq.**
- SEC-registered investment advisers and their supervised persons and solicitors, scope of state authority over
  - Generally, **14:34 to 14:37**
  - SEC registered advisers, **14:35**
  - Solicitors of SEC-registered advisers, **14:37**
  - Supervised persons of SEC advisers, **14:36**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:70**
- SEC enforcement, **14:59**
- SEC inspections, **14:58**
- SEC-registered investment advisers and their supervised persons and solicitors, scope of state authority over, **14:34 to 14:37**
- SEC registration
  - Exemptions from
    - Generally, **14:22 et seq.**
    - Clients, counting number of, **14:24**
    - Federal de minimis exemption, **14:23 to 14:25**
    - Foreign private advisers, **14:28**
    - Holding itself out as adviser, **14:25**
    - Insurance company exemptions, **14:30**
    - Intrastate and insurance company exemptions, **14:30**
    - Private funds, **14:26**
    - Venture capital funds, **14:29**
  - Prohibitions on
    - Generally, **14:31 to 14:33**
    - Mid-size advisers, **14:33**
    - Small advisers, **14:32**
- Soft dollar arrangements, **14:52**
- Solicitors, scope of state authority over, **14:34, 14:37**
- State authority, scope of, **14:34 to 14:37**
- Supervised persons of SEC-registered advisers, scope of state authority over, **14:34, 14:36**
- Withdrawal, Form ADV-W, **14:41**

## INVESTMENT BANKING SERVICES

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:70**

## INVESTMENT COMPANIES

- Act of 1940 (Investment Company Act), generally, **1:8**
- Global offerings, **10:125**
- Private placement, Rule 144A
  - Investment Company Act issues, **5:53, 5:54**
  - Resales to institutional buyers, **5:41**
- Regulation S, **9:45**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:71**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## INVESTMENT CONTRACTS

- See **Securities** (this index)

## **INVESTMENT GRADE DEBT**

Global offerings, **10:90**

## **INVESTMENT GRADE SECURITIES**

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD),  
**12:10**

## **IRAN THREAT REDUCTION ACT**

Exchange Act registration, prohibitions on U.S.  
companies and foreign subsidiaries, **6:13.50**,  
**6:13.60**

SEC disclosure requirements, **6:13.60**

## **ISRAEL**

Accounting and financial matters, **7:311 to 7:316**

## **JOBS ACT**

Tender and exchange offers, opt-in right, emerg-  
ing growth companies, **11:139**

## **JOINT AND SEVERAL UNDERWRITING OBLIGATIONS**

Global offerings, **10:7**

## **JOINT JURISDICTION AND NOTICE REGISTRATION**

Securities, **1:28**

## **JOINT VENTURE INTERESTS**

See **Securities** (this index)

## **JURISDICTION**

See also **Multijurisdictional Disclosure System**  
(this index)

International tender offers and business combina-  
tions involving foreign targets, exclusion of  
U.S. shareholders by avoiding U.S.  
jurisdictional means, **11:151**

Investment advisers, **14:3**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:101**

Securities, **1:23**, **1:28**

Tender and exchange offers, Hart-Scott-Rodino  
Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 (Hart-  
Scott Act), **11:180**

## **LANGUAGE REQUIREMENTS**

Canadian MJSD, **12:113**

## **LANGUAGES, FOREIGN**

Electronic filing, public offerings of equity by a  
foreign issuer into U.S. **Public Offerings of**  
**Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this  
index)

## **LARGE TRADER REPORTING**

**Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

## **LATIN AMERICA**

Accounting and financial matters

Generally, **7:302**

Capital transactions-earnings per share, **7:308**

## **LEGAL AND ARBITRATION PROCEEDINGS**

Accounting and financial matters, **7:282**

## **LEGAL SERVICES**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:77**

## **LETTERS**

Private placement, investor letters, **5:58**

## **LIFE INSURANCE**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:126**

## **LIMITATION OF ACTIONS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:177**

## **LIMITATIONS**

Blue Sky Law, general expense limitations, **15:28**

Regulation S, Rule 905, resale limitations, **9:22**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:108**

## **LIMITED DE MINIMIS EXCEPTION**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:82**

## **LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY INTERESTS**

See **Securities** (this index)

## **LIMITED PARTNERSHIPS**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 102,  
**10:126**

## **LIQUIDATION PROCEEDINGS**

Private placement, Rule 144A securities, **5:54**

## **LISTING REQUIREMENTS**

Generally, **3:1 et seq.**

Additional shares, **3:25**

Additional standards, **3:199**, **3:200**

Amendments of 2004 to listing standards, **3:9**

American Depositary Receipts, **8:25**, **8:26**

American Stock Exchange

Generally, **3:2**

Corporate governance, **3:15**

Disclosure, financial, **3:15**

Financial disclosure, **3:15**

Financial notice, **3:15**

Financial reporting, **3:15**

Notice, financial, **3:15**

Reporting, financial, **3:15**

Requirements, generally, **3:9 et seq.**

AMEX. See American Stock Exchange, above in  
this heading

Annual fees, **3:26**

Class of securities, listing new, **3:27**

Construction and interpretation, **3:30**

Continued listing standards, **3:11**, **3:19**, **3:21**,  
**3:201**

Corporate governance

American Stock Exchange, **3:15**

Financial reporting, **3:31**, **3:32**



## LISTING REQUIREMENTS—Cont'd

- Corporate governance—Cont'd
  - New York Stock Exchange, **3:14, 3:15**
- Delisting, **3:199 to 3:201**
- Disclosure. Financial disclosure, below in this heading
- Entry, **3:24**
- Exchange Act, **6:2, 6:30, 6:31**
- Fees
  - Generally, **3:23 to 3:30**
  - Additional shares, **3:25**
  - Annual, **3:26**
  - Entry, **3:24**
  - New class of securities, listing, **3:27**
  - New York Stock Exchange, **3:13**
  - Other securities, **3:28**
  - Recordkeeping, **3:29**
  - Written interpretations of listing rules, **3:30**
- Financial disclosure
  - American Stock Exchange, **3:15**
  - Corporate governance, **3:31, 3:32**
  - New York Stock Exchange, **3:15**
- Financial notice
  - American Stock Exchange, **3:15**
  - Corporate governance, **3:31, 3:32**
  - New York Stock Exchange, **3:15**
- Financial reporting
  - American Stock Exchange, **3:15**
  - Corporate governance, **3:31, 3:32**
  - New York Stock Exchange, **3:14, 3:15**
- Form 8-K filing requirements for listed U.S. issuers, **3:201**
- Global shares, **3:16**
- Initial listing standards, **3:10, 3:18, 3:20**
- More demanding standards, **3:199, 3:200**
- Nasdaq Capital Market, **3:20, 3:21**
- Nasdaq/NMS, **3:18, 3:19**
- Nasdaq Stock Exchange
  - Generally, **3:4, 3:18 et seq.**
  - Additional or more demanding standards and delisting, **3:200**
  - Continued listing standards, **3:19, 3:21**
  - Corporate governance, **3:31**
  - Disclosure, financial, **3:32**
  - Financial disclosure, **3:32**
  - Financial notice, **3:32**
  - Financial reporting, **3:31, 3:32**
  - Initial listing standards, **3:18, 3:20**
  - Nasdaq Capital Market, **3:20, 3:21**
  - Nasdaq/NMS, **3:18, 3:19**
  - Notice, financial, **3:32**
  - Numerical standards, **3:17 to 3:21**
  - Reporting, financial, **3:31, 3:32**
- New class of securities, listing, **3:27**

## LISTING REQUIREMENTS—Cont'd

- New York Stock Exchange
  - Generally, **3:3, 3:9 et seq.**
  - Additional or more demanding standards and delisting, **3:199**
  - Amendments of 2004 to listing standards, **3:9**
  - Continued listing standards, **3:11**
  - Corporate governance, **3:14, 3:15**
  - Fees, **3:13**
  - Financial disclosure, **3:15**
  - Financial notice, **3:15**
  - Financial reporting, **3:14, 3:15**
  - Global shares, **3:16**
  - Initial listing standards, **3:10**
  - Numerical standards, **3:9 to 3:11**
  - Other NYSE listing requirements, **3:12 to 3:15**
  - Timetable for original listing of equity on NYSE, **App. 3A**
- Notice
  - Failure to meet continued listing standard, delisting, or transfer of listing, **3:201**
  - Financial notice, above in this heading
- Numerical standards
  - Nasdaq Stock Exchange, **3:17 to 3:21**
  - New York Stock Exchange, **3:9 to 3:11**
- NYSE. See New York Stock Exchange, above in this heading
- Original listing, timetable for original listing of equity on NYSE, **App. 3A**
- Other requirements, generally, **3:22 to 3:32**
- Other securities, **3:28**
- Over-the-counter market, generally, **3:4**
- Process, generally, **3:8**
- Recordkeeping, **3:29**
- Registration under Exchange Act, **3:5 to 3:7**
- Reporting. Financial reporting, above in this heading
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)
- SEC registration, **3:5 to 3:7**
- Section 12(b), registration under Exchange Act, **3:6**
- Section 12(g), registration under Exchange Act, **3:7**
- Timetable for original listing of equity on NYSE, **App. 3A**
- Transfer of listing, **3:201**
- U.S. markets, generally, **3:2 to 3:4**
- Written interpretations of listing rules, **3:30**

## LISTING STANDARDS

- Securities, **1:29**

## LIVE ELECTRONIC AUCTIONS

- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:111**

## **LIVE ROAD SHOWS**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:67**

## **LOANS**

See also **Securities** (this index)

Blue Sky Law, loans to officers, directors, and employees, **15:23**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **LOCATION**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:123, 6:44, 7:91**

## **LOOK-BACK PERIOD**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:54, 3:58**

## **LOST AND STOLEN SECURITIES PROGRAM**

Broker-dealers, **13:142**

## **LTID SUFFIXES**

Large traders, use of LTID suffixes, **11:51**

## **MAIL AND WIRE FRAUD**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:185**

## **MANAGEMENT EVALUATION**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **MANAGEMENT EXPERTISE**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:110**

## **MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:68**

## **MANAGEMENT INVESTMENT COMPANY**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:92**

## **MANAGEMENT'S ANNUAL INTERNAL CONTROL REPORT**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:58**

## **MANAGEMENT'S ASSESSMENT**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:62**

## **MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS (MD&A)**

**Accounting and Financial Matters** (this index)

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **MANDATORILY CONVERTIBLE OR EXCHANGEABLE SECURITIES**

Generally, **4:49**

CEA considerations, **4:51**

Preemption of state law, **4:51**

Registration, **4:50**

State law, **4:51**

## **MANUAL SIGNATURES**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:89**

## **MARGIN SECURITIES**

Broker-dealers, installment payment arrangements, global offerings, **10:12**

Tender and exchange offers, federal regulations, **11:172**

Underwriters, global offerings, installment payment arrangements, **10:12**

## **MARKET MAKING**

Section 16(d), beneficial ownership reporting, **11:32**

## **MARKET REGULATION RULES**

Canadian MJSD, **12:144 et seq.**

## **MARTIN ACT**

Generally, **15:49 to 15:51**

## **MD&A**

**Management's Discussion and Analysis (MD&A)** (this index)

## **MEETINGS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **MERGERS**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:85**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:160**

Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, beneficial ownership reporting, **11:28**

## **MERGERS AND ACQUISITIONS**

Securities exchange act (1934)

Form 12h-6, terminating successor issuer status after M&A transaction, **6:29.30**

Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:28**

## **MEXICO**

Accounting and financial matters, **7:296 to 7:301**

## **MINING RESERVES AND DEPLETION**

Disclosure, accounting and financial matters, **7:286**

## **MINORITY-OWNED ENTITIES**

Large trader filing requirements, **11:52**

## **MISLEADING**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:96**

## **MONITORING**

Large trader reporting, **11:67, 11:71**

Registered broker-dealers, **11:71**

## **MULTIJURISDICTIONAL DISCLOSURE SYSTEM (MJSD)**

Generally, **12:1 et seq.**

A-B or Exxon capital exchange offers, **12:32**

Accounting, Form 40-F, **12:44**

Advertising securities, remaining applicable Canadian laws, **12:119, 12:120**

**MULTIJURISDICTIONAL DISCLOSURE  
SYSTEM (MJSD)—Cont'd**

- Agents for service, appointment of
  - Supporting documentation, **12:110**
- Alternative for exchange offers and business combinations, Form F-80, **12:9**
- Alternatives
  - Generally, **12:81 et. seq**
  - Cross border rights offerings, exemption from Securities Act registration, **12:84**
  - Cross border tender offers and business combinations, **12:85 to 12:87**
  - Exchange Act reporting, **12:83**
  - Exemptions from Exchange Act tender offer requirements, **12:87**
  - Securities Act registration, **12:82**
  - Securities Act registration and exemptions, **12:86**
- Amendments, Canadian MJSD, **12:102**
- Antimanipulation rules concerning securities offerings, underwriters, **12:78**
- Appointment of agent for service, **12:110**
- Auditing and accounting requirements, Form 40-F, **12:44**
- Auditor independence, **12:44**
- Bids
  - Canadian MJSD. See Canadian MJSD, below in this heading
  - Tender offers under MJDS, **12:52**
- Bought deals, **12:120**
- Broker-dealer registration, underwriters, **12:76**
- Business combinations. See Canadian MJSD, below in this heading
- Calculation of fees, remaining applicable Canadian laws, **12:117**
- Canadian issuers. See Securities Act registration of U.S. offerings by Canadian issuers, below in this heading
- Canadian MJSD
  - Generally, **12:88 et seq.**
  - Advertising securities, remaining applicable Canadian laws, **12:119, 12:120**
  - Agent for service, appointment of, **12:110**
  - Amendments, **12:102**
  - Appointment of agent for service, **12:110**
  - Bids for securities of U.S. issuers
    - Generally, **12:122 et seq.**
    - Applicable Canadian law, **12:124**
    - Bidder filing requirements, **12:128 to 12:130**
    - Change, notice of change, **12:133**
    - Delivery to securityholders, **12:136**
    - Eligibility requirements, **12:123, 12:125**
    - Fees, **12:135**
    - General filing requirements for bidder, **12:128 to 12:130**

**MULTIJURISDICTIONAL DISCLOSURE  
SYSTEM (MJSD)—Cont'd**

- Canadian MJSD—Cont'd
  - Bids for securities of U.S. issuers—Cont'd
    - Incorporation by reference procedures, **12:134**
    - Mechanics of making CMJDS bid, generally, **12:126 et seq.**
    - Notice of change, **12:133**
    - Notice of variation, **12:133**
    - Reference, incorporation by, **12:134**
    - Securities Exchange bids, eligibility requirements for, **12:125**
    - Securityholders, delivery to, **12:136**
    - Supporting documents for offeror filing requirements, **12:128 to 12:130**
    - Target issuer requirements, **12:131**
    - Variation, notice of, **12:133**
  - Bought deals, **12:120**
  - Business combinations
    - Generally, **12:137 et seq.**
    - Eligibility requirements, **12:138**
    - Mechanics of, **12:139**
    - Private, going and related party transactions, **12:140**
  - Calculation of fees, remaining applicable Canadian laws, **12:117**
  - Canadian securities law, **12:89 et seq.**
  - Certificates, **12:101, 12:107**
  - Change, notice of, **12:133**
  - Conflict of interest requirements, remaining applicable Canadian laws, **12:118**
  - Continuous disclosure, **12:141**
  - Copies, filing and delivery requirements, **12:112**
  - Debt securities and preferred shares (Section 3.1(a) offerings), **12:92**
  - Definitions, **12:90**
  - Delivery, **12:112, 12:114**
  - Effective dates and receipt procedures, filing and delivery requirements, **12:115**
  - Exempt financing in Canada, **12:147**
  - Fees, **12:117, 12:135**
  - Filing and delivery requirements, **12:112 to 12:115**
  - Final prospectus, **12:99**
  - Financing methods available for U.S. issuers, other, **12:145**
  - Foreign Issuer Prospectus and Continuous Disclosure System (FIPS), **12:146**
  - General filing requirements for offeror, **12:128 to 12:130**
  - Incorporation by reference procedures, **12:134**
  - Informational legends, **12:127**
  - Insider trading, **12:143**

**MULTIJURISDICTIONAL DISCLOSURE  
SYSTEM (MJSD)—Cont'd**

Canadian MJSD—Cont'd

Language requirements for filings made in  
Quebec, filing and delivery requirements,  
**12:113**

Laws, remaining applicable Canadian laws,  
**12:116 to 12:120**

Market regulation rules, **12:144 et seq.**

Notice of change, **12:133**

Notice of variation, **12:133**

Offeror filing requirements, **12:128 to 12:130**

Powers of attorney, **12:111**

Preferred shares (Section 3.1(a) offerings),  
**12:92**

Preliminary prospectus, **12:99**

Private, going and related party transactions,  
**12:140**

Prospectus offerings

Generally, **12:91 et seq.**

Advertising securities, remaining applicable  
Canadian laws, **12:119, 12:120**

Agent for service, appointment of, **12:110**

Amendments, **12:102**

Appointment of agent for service, **12:110**

Bought deals, **12:120**

Certificates, **12:101, 12:107**

Conflict of interest requirements, remaining  
applicable Canadian laws, **12:118**

Copies, filing and delivery requirements,  
**12:112**

Debt securities and preferred shares (Section  
3.1(a) offerings), **12:92**

Delivery, **12:112, 12:114**

Effective dates and receipt procedures,  
**12:115**

Eligible securities, generally, **12:91 et seq.**

Filing and delivery requirements, **12:112 to  
12:115**

Final prospectus, **12:99**

Foreign Issuer Prospectus and Continuous  
Disclosure System (FIPS), **12:146**

General instructions, **12:98 et seq.**

Informational legends, **12:100**

Language requirements for filings made in  
Quebec, **12:113**

Laws, remaining applicable Canadian laws,  
**12:116 to 12:120**

Other offerings, supplements, **12:105**

Powers of attorney, **12:111**

Preferred shares (Section 3.1(a) offerings),  
**12:92**

Preliminary prospectus, **12:99**

Quebec, language requirements for filings  
made in, **12:113**

Receipts, **12:115**

**MULTIJURISDICTIONAL DISCLOSURE  
SYSTEM (MJSD)—Cont'd**

Canadian MJSD—Cont'd

Prospectus offerings—Cont'd

Remaining applicable Canadian laws,  
**12:116 to 12:120**

Report on property, **12:109**

Rights offerings (Section 3.1(b) offerings),  
**12:94**

Rule 430A offerings, **12:97**

Rule 430A pricing prospectus, supplements,  
**12:104**

Rule 415 offerings, **12:91, 12:97**

Section 3.1(a) offerings, debt securities and  
preferred shares, **12:92**

Section 3.1(b) offerings, rights offerings,  
**12:94**

Service, appointment of agent for, **12:110**

Subsidiary offerings, **12:95**

Successor issuers, offerings by, **12:96**

Supplements for Rule 415, **12:103**

Supporting documentation

Generally, **12:106 et seq.**

Agents, appointment of agent for service,  
**12:110**

Appointment of agent for service, **12:110**

Certificate confirming satisfaction of  
eligibility requirements, **12:107**

Consents, **12:108**

Powers of attorney, **12:111**

Report on property, **12:109**

Service, appointment of agent for, **12:110**

Trust indenture requirements, **12:121**

Quebec, language requirements for filings  
made in, **12:113**

Receipts, **12:115**

Reference, incorporation by, **12:134**

Report on property, **12:109**

Rights offerings (Section 3.1(b) offerings),  
**12:94**

Rule 430A offerings, **12:97**

Rule 430A pricing prospectus, supplements,  
**12:104**

Rule 415 offerings, **12:91, 12:97**

Section 3.1(a) offerings, debt securities and  
preferred shares, **12:92**

Section 3.1(b) offerings, rights offerings, **12:94**

Securities Exchange bids, eligibility require-  
ments for, **12:125**

Securityholders, delivery to, **12:136**

Service, appointment of agent for, **12:110**

Subsidiary offerings, **12:95**

Successor issuers, offerings by, **12:96**

Supplements for Rule 415, **12:103**

Supporting documentation

Bids for securities of U.S. issuers, **12:130**

## **MULTIJURISDICTIONAL DISCLOSURE SYSTEM (MJSD)—Cont'd**

- Canadian MJSD—Cont'd
  - Supporting documentation—Cont'd
    - Prospectus offerings. See Prospectus offerings, above in this heading
  - Target issuer requirements, **12:131**
  - Trust indenture requirements, **12:121**
  - Variation, notice of, **12:133**
- Certificates, **12:101, 12:107**
- Change, notice of, **12:133**
- Civil liability and antifraud provisions, material misstatements or omissions, **12:65, 12:66**
- Conflict of interest requirements, remaining applicable Canadian laws, **12:118**
- Cross-border “bought deals,” **12:80**
- Cross border rights offerings, exemption from Securities Act registration, **12:84**
- Cross border tender offers and business combinations, alternatives, **12:85 to 12:87**
- Debt securities and preferred shares (Section 3.1(a) offerings), **12:92**
- Definitions, shared, **12:2**
- Delivery, **12:112, 12:114**
- Effective dates, **12:23, 12:48**
- Electronic filing, **12:63**
- Exchange Act
  - Also see entries beginning “Securities Act,” below
  - Section 18, Exchange Act compliance, **12:57**
  - Tender offers. See Tender offers under MJDS, below in this heading
- Exchange Act registration and reporting process
  - Also see entries beginning “Securities Act,” below
  - Generally, **12:46 to 12:48**
  - Effective dates, **12:48**
  - Filings, **12:47**
  - Section 15(d) reporting, **12:35**
  - Summary and other reporting issues, **12:37**
  - U.S. Stock Exchange, Nasdaq and OTC Bulletin Board related obligations, **12:36**
- Exchange Act reporting, alternatives, **12:83**
- Exchange offers
  - Generally, **12:74**
  - Securities Act registration, **12:7, 12:9, 12:26**
- Exclusions from prospectus—exhibits, **12:17**
- Exempt financing in Canada, **12:147**
- Exemptions from Exchange Act tender offer requirements, alternatives, **12:87**
- Exhibits, exclusions from prospectus, **12:17**
- Exxon capital exchange offers, **12:32**
- Federal preemption, **12:71**
- Fees, **12:62**
- Final prospectus, **12:99**
- Financial statements, **12:43**

## **MULTIJURISDICTIONAL DISCLOSURE SYSTEM (MJSD)—Cont'd**

- Financing methods available for U.S. issuers, other, **12:145**
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, **12:68**
- Foreign Issuer Prospectus and Continuous Disclosure System (FIPS), **12:146**
- Form F-7, rights offerings, **12:4**
- Form F-8, business combinations and exchange offers, **12:5 to 12:8**
- Form F-9, investment grade securities, **12:10**
- Form F-10, general registration form, **12:11**
- Form F-80, alternative for exchange offers and business combinations, **12:9**
- Form F-80, business combinations and exchange offers, **12:5 to 12:8**
- Form 40-F
  - Generally, **12:38**
  - Accounting, auditing and accounting requirements, **12:44**
  - Auditing and accounting requirements, **12:44**
  - Auditor independence, **12:44**
  - Consents, **12:41**
  - Eligibility, **12:39**
  - Information required, **12:40**
  - Preparation of Form 40-F, **12:40 to 12:44**
  - Signature page, **12:42**
  - Undertakings, **12:42**
- Form 6-K, **12:45**
- General conditions, Form F-8 and F-80, business combinations and exchange offers, **12:6**
- General registration form, Form F-10, **12:11**
- Home jurisdiction document, **12:14**
- Incorporation by reference procedures, **12:134**
- Informational legends, **12:15, 12:100**
- Insider and proxy rules, **12:69**
- Insider trading, **12:143**
- Installment receipts, **12:79**
- Investment grade securities, Form F-9, **12:10**
- Issues where no federal preemption, **12:72**
- Language requirements for filings made in Quebec, **12:113**
- Market regulation rules, **12:144 et seq.**
- NASD review, underwriters, **12:77**
- Notice, **12:133**
- Powers of attorney, **12:111**
- Preferred shares (Section 3.1(a) offerings), **12:92**
- Preliminary prospectus, **12:99**
- Preparation of MJDS Securities Act registration forms, generally, **12:12 et seq.**
- Prospectus
  - Exclusions from prospectus—exhibits, **12:17**
  - Offerings of CMJSD. See Canadian MJSD, above in this heading
- Proxy rules, **12:69**



**MULTIJURISDICTIONAL DISCLOSURE  
SYSTEM (MJSD)—Cont'd**

Quebec, language requirements for filings made in, **12:113**

Receipts, **12:115**

Reference, incorporation by, **12:134**

Registration

- A-B or Exxon capital exchange offers, **12:32**
- Auditor independence, **12:29**
- Broker-dealer registration, underwriters, **12:76**
- Considerations, **12:27 to 12:32**
- Exchange Act registration and reporting process, **12:46 to 12:48**
- Exchange Act requirements, **12:38 to 12:44**
- Financial statements, accounting and auditing requirements, **12:28 et seq.**
- Form F-10, general registration form, **12:11**
- Forms, preparation, generally, **12:12 et seq.**
- Private placements, **12:30 to 12:32**
- Regulation D information requirements, **12:31**
- Securities Act registration
  - Canadian issuers. See Securities Act registration of U.S. offerings by Canadian issuers, below in this heading
  - Process. See Securities Act registration process, filing registration statement, below
- Regulation D information requirements, **12:31**
- Regulation M and 14e-5, Exchange Act compliance, **12:56**
- Regulation S, **12:67**
- Reports and reporting, **12:46 to 12:48**
- Rights offerings, **12:4, 12:25, 12:73**
- Rule 430A offerings, **12:97**
- Rule 430A pricing prospectus, supplements, **12:104**
- Rule 415 offerings, **12:91, 12:97**
- Safe harbor and “forward-looking” statements, **12:66**
- Schedule 14D-9F, **12:60**
- Schedules 13E-4F, 14D-1F and 14D-9F, **12:59 to 12:62**
- Schedules 13E-4F and 14D-1F, preparation of, **12:59**
- Section 10(b) and Rule 10b-5, Exchange Act compliance, **12:55**
- Section 14(e) and Rule 14e-3, Exchange Act compliance, **12:54**
- Section 3.1(a) offerings, debt securities and preferred shares, **12:92**
- Section 3.1(b) offerings, rights offerings, **12:94**
- Section 15(d) reporting, **12:35**
- Securities Act
  - Also see Exchange Act, above in this heading
  - Registration, alternatives, **12:82**

**MULTIJURISDICTIONAL DISCLOSURE  
SYSTEM (MJSD)—Cont'd**

Securities Act—Cont'd

- Registration and exemptions, alternatives, **12:86**
- Securities Act registration forms
  - Exclusions from prospectus—exhibits, **12:17**
  - Exhibits, exclusions from prospectus, **12:17**
  - Home jurisdiction document, **12:14**
  - Informational legends, **12:15**
  - Information required to be delivered to offerees or purchasers, U.S. prospectus, **12:13 to 12:16**
  - List of documents required, **12:16**
  - Preparation of MJDS Securities Act registration forms, generally, **12:12 et seq.**
  - Prospectus, exclusions from—exhibits, **12:17**
  - Service of process, consent to, **12:18, 12:20**
  - Signature page, **12:21**
  - Undertakings, **12:18, 12:19**
- Securities Act registration of U.S. offerings by Canadian issuers
  - Generally, **12:3 et seq.**
  - Alternative for exchange offers and business combinations, Form F-80, **12:9**
  - Business combinations, **12:5 to 12:8**
  - Exchange offers, **12:7, 12:9**
  - Form F-7, rights offerings, **12:4**
  - Form F-8, business combinations and exchange offers, **12:5 to 12:8**
  - Form F-9, investment grade securities, **12:10**
  - Form F-10, general registration form, **12:11**
  - Form F-80, alternative for exchange offers and business combinations, **12:9**
  - Form F-80, business combinations and exchange offers, **12:5 to 12:8**
  - General conditions, Form F-8 and F-80, business combinations and exchange offers, **12:6**
  - General registration form, Form F-10, **12:11**
  - Investment grade securities, Form F-9, **12:10**
  - Registration, Form F-10, general registration form, **12:11**
  - Rights offerings, Form F-7, **12:4**
- Securities Act registration process: filing registration statement
  - Generally, **12:22 et seq.**
  - Effective dates, **12:23**
  - Exchange offers and business combinations, **12:26**
  - Registration fees, **12:24 to 12:26**
  - Rights offerings, **12:25**
- Securities Exchange bids, eligibility requirements for, **12:125**
- Securityholders, delivery to, **12:136**
- Service, appointment of agent for, **12:110**

**MULTIJURISDICTIONAL DISCLOSURE  
SYSTEM (MJSD)—Cont’d**

- Service of process, consent to, **12:18, 12:20**
- Signature page, **12:21**
- State securities laws
  - Generally, **12:70 to 12:74**
  - Exchange offers, **12:74**
  - Federal preemption, **12:71**
  - Issues where no federal preemption, **12:72**
  - Rights offerings, **12:73**
- Subsidiary offerings, **12:95**
- Successor issuers, offerings by, **12:96**
- Supplements for Rule 415, **12:103**
- Supporting documents for offeror filing requirements, **12:130**
- Tender offers under MJDS
  - Generally, **12:49 et seq.**
  - Bids, issuer bids, **12:52**
  - Eligibility requirements, **12:50 to 12:52**
  - Exchange Act compliance, generally, **12:53 et seq.**
  - Exchange Act Section 18, Exchange Act compliance, **12:57**
  - Fees for Schedules 13E-4F, 14D-1F and 14D-9F, **12:62**
  - Filing instructions for Schedules 13E-4F, 14D-1F and 14D-9F, **12:61**
  - Issuer bids, **12:52**
  - Regulation M and 14e-5, Exchange Act compliance, **12:56**
  - Schedule 14D-9F, **12:60**
  - Schedules 13E-4F, 14D-1F and 14D-9F, **12:59 to 12:62**
  - Schedules 13E-4F and 14D-1F, preparation of, **12:59**
  - Section 10(b) and Rule 10b-5, Exchange Act compliance, **12:55**
  - Section 14(e) and Rule 14e-3, Exchange Act compliance, **12:54**
  - Sections 13(d) and (g), 13(e)(1) and Rule 13e-3, **12:58**
  - Third-party tender offers, **12:51**
- Third-party tender offers, **12:51**
- Trust Indenture Act, **12:33**
- Undertakings, **12:18, 12:19**
- Underwriters, **12:75 to 12:80**
- U.S. liability issues
  - Generally, **12:64 to 12:68**
  - Civil liability and antifraud provisions, material misstatements or omissions, **12:65, 12:66**
  - Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, **12:68**
  - Regulation S, **12:67**
  - Safe harbor and “forward-looking” statements, **12:66**

**MULTIJURISDICTIONAL DISCLOSURE  
SYSTEM (MJSD)—Cont’d**

- U.S. Multijurisdictional disclosure system (MJSD), generally, **12:2 et seq.**
- U.S. Stock Exchange, Nasdaq and OTC Bulletin Board related obligations, **12:36**
- Variation, notice of, **12:133**

**MULTINATIONAL DEVELOPMENT BANKS**

- Reporting requirements, **4:22**
- Securities of, **4:21, 4:22**

**MULTINATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS**

- See **Sovereigns** (this index)

**MUTUAL FUNDS**

- Broker-dealers, exclusions and exemptions, **13:90**

**NAFTA**

- Foreign broker-dealers, exemptions for, **13:115**

**NASAA**

- Blue Sky Law, **15:3**

**NASD**

- Global offerings, **10:22 to 10:56**
- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:77**
- Self-regulatory organizations, **13:130**

**NASDAQ STOCK EXCHANGE**

- Generally, **3:4, 3:18 et seq.**
- Audit committees, listing standards for, **7:107**
- Capital Market, **3:20, 3:21**
- Continued listing standards, **3:19, 3:21**
- Corporate governance, **3:31**
- Disclosure, financial, **3:32**
- Exchange Act registration, **6:3**
- Financial disclosure, **3:32**
- Financial notice, **3:32**
- Financial reporting, **3:31, 3:32**
- Global offerings, Rule 103, **10:137, 10:138**
- Initial listing standards, **3:18, 3:20**
- NMS, **3:18, 3:19**
- Notice, financial, **3:32**
- Numerical standards, **3:17 to 3:21**
- Reporting, financial, **3:31, 3:32**
- Reporting system, **6:32**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**NATIONAL SECURITIES MARKETS  
IMPROVEMENT ACT**

- Blue sky laws, exemptions, **15:15**

**NET CAPITAL RULE**

- Private placement, Rule 144A, **5:55, 5:56**

**NEW CLASS OF SECURITIES**

- Listing requirements, **3:27**

## **NEWLY PUBLIC COMPANIES**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:85**

## **NEW SHARES**

American Depositary Receipts, program options, **8:26**

## **NEW YORK PRACTICE**

Blue Sky Law, **15:49 to 15:51**

## **NEW YORK STOCK EXCHANGE**

Generally, **3:3, 3:9 et seq.**

Amendments of 2004 to listing standards, **3:9**

Audit committees, listing standards for, **7:107**

Broker-dealers, membership, **13:138**

Continued listing standards, **3:11**

Corporate governance, **3:14, 3:15**

Exchange Act reporting, **6:31**

Fees, **3:13**

Financial disclosure, **3:15**

Financial notice, **3:15**

Financial reporting, **3:14, 3:15**

Global shares, **3:16**

Initial listing standards, **3:10**

Numerical standards, **3:9 to 3:11**

Other NYSE listing requirements, **3:12 to 3:15**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

Self-regulatory organizations, **13:138**

Timetable for original listing of equity on NYSE, **App. 3A**

## **NO-ACTION RELIEF**

Private placement, documentation, **5:66**

## **NOMINATING COMMITTEE**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:60 to 3:63**

## **NON-AUDIT SERVICES**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **NONDESIGNATED EXCHANGE**

Regulation S, **9:20**

## **NONDIRECT CONTACTS**

Foreign broker-dealers, exemptions for. See **Broker-Dealers** (this index)

## **NONFUNGIBLE SECURITIES**

Private placement, Rule 144A, **5:42**

## **NONINTEGRATION**

Regulation S, **9:42**

## **NONREPORTING ISSUER**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:22, 2:56**

## **NORTH AMERICAN SECURITIES**

**ADMINISTRATORS ASSOCIATION (NASAA)**

Blue Sky Law, **15:3**

## **NOTES**

See **Securities** (this index)

## **NOTICE**

American Stock Exchange, financial notice, **3:16**

Canadian MJSD, notice of change, **12:133**

Canadian MJSD, notice of variation, **12:133**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 104, stabilization and other syndicate activities, **10:147**

**Listing Requirements** (this index)

Nasdaq Stock Exchange, financial notice, **3:32**

Private placement, **5:24, 5:50**

**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

Securities, **1:28**

## **NUMERICAL STANDARDS**

Nasdaq Stock Exchange, **3:17 to 3:21**

New York Stock Exchange, **3:9 to 3:11**

## **NYSE**

See **New York Stock Exchange** (this index)

## **ODD-LOT TRANSACTIONS**

Global offerings, Regulation M

Rule 101, **10:103**

Rule 102, **10:124**

## **OFF-BALANCE SHEET ARRANGEMENTS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **OFFERS TO BUY**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:108**

## **OFFICE OF INSPECTOR GENERAL**

SEC's Section 13(f) institutional investment manager reporting requirements, review, **11:43**

## **OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS**

See **Directors and Officers** (this index)

## **OFFSHORE**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., press activities, **2:39, 2:44**

Regulation S, **9:8, 9:25, 9:44**

## **OIL AND GAS**

Accounting and financial matters

Full cost ceiling test, **7:285**

Properties, **7:293**

## **ONLINE OFFERINGS**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:108, 2:109**

## **OPEN-END MANAGEMENT INVESTMENT COMPANY**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:92**

**OPEN MARKET PLANS**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 102,  
**10:129**

**OPINION**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **6:79 to 6:83**

**OPTIONS AND WARRANTS**

Blue Sky Law, **15:22**

**ORAL COMMUNICATIONS**

**Securities Offering Reform** (this index)

**ORAL OFFERS**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:47**

**ORAL RELEASES**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:99**

**ORDERS**

Global offerings, **10:159**

**ORDINARY SHARES**

Blue Sky Law, **15:17**

**ORIGINAL LISTING**

New York Stock Exchange, timetable for original  
listing of equity on, **App. 3A**

**OTC DERIVATIVES DEALERS**

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

**OTHER SECURITIES**

Listing requirements, **3:28**

**OUTSOURCING SERVICES**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:76**

**OVERLAPPING BOARD RELATIONSHIPS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:86**

**OVERSIGHT**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**OVER-THE-COUNTER AND OTHER**

**WIDELY HELD SECURITIES**

Generally, **3:4**

Registration. See **Securities Exchange Act**  
(1934) (this index)

**PAPILSKY RULES**

Global offerings, **10:35 to 10:40**

**PARENT COMPANY**

Large trader filing requirements, **11:50 to 11:52**

**PARTNERSHIPS**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 102,  
**10:126**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **7:48, 7:54**

**Securities** (this index)

**PASSIVE INVESTORS**

Beneficial ownership reports, **11:7**

**PASSIVE MARKET**

Global offerings, Rule 103, **10:137, 10:138**

**PAYMENT ARRANGEMENTS**

Global offerings, **10:12**

**PENALTIES**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**PENSION FUNDS**

Accounting and financial matters, **7:246**

Israel, **7:313**

Mexico, **7:297**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**PERFORMANCE**

Accounting and financial matters, **7:255**

**PERFORMANCE FEES**

Investment advisers, **14:50**

**PERIODIC DISCLOSURES**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**PERIODIC REPORTING**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:164**

**PERSONAL LOANS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**PLACEMENT**

Blue Sky Law, private placements in U.S. by  
foreign investors, **15:44 to 15:47**

**POISON PILLS**

Tender and exchange offers, state laws, **11:176**

**POLITICAL SUBDIVISIONS, SECURITIES  
ISSUED BY**

See **Sovereigns** (this index)

**PORTAL**

Private placement, **5:68, 5:69**

**POST-EFFECTIVE PERIOD**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:28, 2:69, 2:70, 2:84**

**POWERS OF ATTORNEY**

Canadian MJSD, **12:111**

**PREEMPTION**

Private placement, state blue sky issues, **5:57**

**PREFERRED STOCK**

Canadian MJSD, **12:92**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:90**

**PRE-FILING PERIOD**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:26, 2:40 to 2:44**

**PRELIMINARY NOTES**

Global offerings, Regulation M, **10:66**

**PRELIMINARY NOTES—Cont'd**

Regulation S, **9:4**

**PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS**

Canadian MJSD, **12:99**

**PRESS ANNOUNCEMENTS**

Private placement, **5:63**

**PRESUMPTION**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:66**

**PRICE**

Blue Sky Law, **15:21**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:88, 2:90**

**PRICE LEVEL ADJUSTED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

Generally, **7:142 to 7:145**

Cash flow statements, **7:145**

Updating, **7:144**

U.S. GAAP, **7:143**

**PRINCIPAL AND AGENT**

See **Agents and Agencies** (this index)

**PRIVACY OF CONSUMER FINANCIAL INFORMATION**

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

**PRIVATE INVESTMENT COMPANY**

Investment advisors, performance fee contract, **14:50**

**PRIVATE ISSUER**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**PRIVATE OFFERINGS**

Blue sky laws, exemptions and exclusions, **App. 15D**

Private placement, documentation, **5:65 et seq.**

**PRIVATE PLACEMENT**

Generally, **5:1 et seq.**

Abandoned offerings, Rule 155, **5:67**

ADRs, interaction with Regulation S, **5:52**

Antimanipulation rules concerning securities offerings, Regulation M, **5:72**

Background, **5:2 to 5:5**

“Bad actors,” disqualifying, **5:21**

Blue sky laws

Generally, **5:32**

Federal preemption, **5:57**

Resales of private placement securities, **5:57**

State exemptions, **5:57**

Broker-dealer issues

Net capital rule, **5:55, 5:56**

Rule 506(c), **5:16**

Calculating qualifying amount, **5:46**

**PRIVATE PLACEMENT—Cont'd**

Clearance and settlement of PORTAL securities, **5:68, 5:69**

Conditions. See Rule 144A, below in this heading

Contractual restrictions, **5:58 et seq.**

Current regulatory scheme, generally, **5:6 et seq.**

Disclosure, Section 4(2) disclosure, **5:27**

Disclosure documents, Internet offerings, **5:76**

Documentation

Generally, **5:58 et seq.**

Contractual restrictions, **5:58 et seq.**

Emerging market issuers, offerings, **5:59**

Exchange offers, **5:64**

FINRA Rule 5123, disclosure of documents by member firms, **5:29**

Fiscal agency agreements for Rule 144A offerings, **5:61**

Integration of private and public offerings, **5:65 et seq.**

Internet offerings, disclosure documents, **5:76**

Interpretative guidance, **5:66**

Investor letters, **5:58**

Letters from investors, **5:58**

No-action relief, **5:66**

Offering documents, **5:28, 5:29**

Press announcements, **5:63**

Private offerings, integration with public offerings, **5:65 et seq.**

Public offerings, integration with private offerings, **5:65 et seq.**

Purchase agreements for Rule 144A offerings, **5:61**

Regulation D, **5:66**

Restrictions, contractual, **5:58 et seq.**

Rule 152, **5:66**

Rule 144 exemption, **5:36**

Side-by-side offerings, **5:60**

Undocumented offerings, **5:62**

Due diligence, **5:30**

Electronic distribution of disclosure documents, **5:76**

Eligible purchasers. See Rule 144A, below in this heading

Eligible securities, nonfungible securities, **5:42**

Emerging market issuers, documentation, **5:59**

Employee stock offerings, **5:71**

Exchange offers, **5:64**

Exemptions, blue sky laws, **5:57**

Exemption Section 4(2), **5:3**

Federal preemption, state blue sky issues, **5:57**

FINRA Rule 5123, disclosure of documents by member firms, **5:29**

Fiscal agency agreements for Rule 144A offerings, **5:61**

Form D, notice of sale, **5:24**



**PRIVATE PLACEMENT—Cont'd**

- Former shell companies, Rule 144, **5:35**
- General publicity activities, Internet offerings, **5:75**
- Global Offerings** (this index)
- Hedging transactions, Rule 144, **5:38**
- History, **5:2 to 5:5**
- Information requirements, **5:49**
- Institutional buyers. See Rule 144A, below in this heading
- Integration of private and public offerings
  - Generally, **5:65 et seq.**
  - History, **5:5**
  - Interpretative guidance, **5:66**
  - No-action relief, **5:66**
  - Regulation D, **5:25, 5:66**
  - Rule 152, **5:66**
  - Rule 155, abandoned offerings, **5:67**
- Internet offerings
  - Generally, **5:73**
  - Disclosure documents, **5:76**
  - Electronic distribution of disclosure documents, **5:76**
  - General publicity activities, **5:75**
  - Procedures, **5:74**
  - Publicity activities, **5:75**
  - Roadshows, **5:77**
- Interpretative guidance, documentation, **5:66**
- Investment Company Act, **5:41, 5:53, 5:54**
- Investor letters, **5:58**
- Letters from investors, **5:58**
- Liquidity of Rule 144A securities, **5:54**
- Martin Act, **15:49 to 15:51**
- Most entities, Rule 144A, **5:44**
- Net capital rule, broker-dealer issues, **5:55, 5:56**
- No-action relief, documentation, **5:66**
- Nonfungible securities, **5:42**
- Notice, **5:24, 5:50**
- Offering documents, **5:28, 5:29**
- PORTAL, 5:68, 5:69**
- Preemption, state blue sky issues, **5:57**
- Press announcements, **5:63**
- Private offerings, integration with public offerings, **5:65 et seq.**
- Private resales of private placement securities, Section 4(1 1/2), **5:39**
- Proof of eligibility, **5:47**
- Publicity activities, Internet offerings, **5:75**
- Public offerings, integration with private offerings, **5:65 et seq.**
- Purchase agreements for Rule 144A offerings, **5:61**
- Qualified institutional buyers, **5:43**
- Qualifying amount, calculating, **5:46**
- Reasonable care exemption and waivers, **5:22**
- Registered broker-dealers, **5:45**

**PRIVATE PLACEMENT—Cont'd**

- Regulation D
  - Generally, **5:7 et seq.**
  - Amendments to Regulation D, Form D, and Rule 156, **5:9, 5:17**
  - “Bad actors,” disqualifying, **5:21**
  - Blue sky laws, **15:44 to 15:46**
  - Documentation, **5:66**
  - Form D, notice of sale, **5:24**
  - Form D check the box for Rule 506(b) and Rule 506(c), **5:12**
  - General solicitation
    - With (Rule 506(c)), **5:11**
    - Private funds, **5:13**
    - Regulation S offerings, **5:15**
    - Rule 144A offering, **5:14**
    - Without (Rule 506(b)), **5:10**
  - Information needed, **5:19**
  - Integration, **5:25**
  - Notice of sale, Form D, **5:24**
  - Offering, manner of, **5:20**
  - Reasonable care exemption and waivers, **5:22**
  - Resale, restrictions on, **5:23**
  - Restrictions on resale, **5:23**
  - Rule 506
    - Generally, **5:8 et seq.**
    - “Bad actors,” disqualifying, **5:21**
    - Form D, notice of sale, **5:24**
    - Information needed, **5:19**
    - Integration, **5:25**
    - Notice of sale, Form D, **5:24**
    - Offering, manner of, **5:20**
    - Reasonable care exemption and waivers, **5:22**
    - Resale, restrictions on, **5:23**
    - Restrictions on resale, **5:23**
    - Sale, notice of, Form D, **5:24**
  - Sale, notice of, Form D, **5:24**
  - Solicitation materials, proposed rule amendments to, **5:18**
  - Substantial compliance, **5:26**
- Regulation FD, **5:31**
- Regulation M, antimanipulation rules concerning securities offerings, **5:72**
- Regulation S, interaction with, **5:51, 5:52**
- Regulation T and Rule 144A, **5:56**
- Remnant, **5:53**
- Removal of restrictive legend, Rule 144, **5:37**
- Resales
  - Generally, **5:33**
  - Blue sky laws, **5:57**
  - Rule 144, below
  - Rule 144A, below
- Restricted securities, resales of, **5:4**
- Restrictions, contractual, **5:58 et seq.**

**PRIVATE PLACEMENT—Cont'd**

Restrictions on resale, **5:23**  
 Restrictive legend removal, Rule 144, **5:37**  
 Rule 144  
   Documentation for exemption, **5:36**  
   Exemption documentation, **5:36**  
   Former shell companies, **5:35**  
   Hedging transactions, **5:38**  
   Removal of restrictive legend, **5:37**  
   Resales of private placement securities, **5:34 et seq.**  
   Restrictive legend, **5:37**  
   Unavailability of Rule, **5:35**  
 Rule 152, documentation, **5:66**  
 Rule 155, integration of abandoned offerings, **5:67**  
 Rule 506. See Regulation D, above in this heading  
 Rule 144A  
   Generally, **5:40 et seq.**  
   ADRs, interaction with Regulation S, **5:52**  
   Broker-dealer issues, net capital rule, **5:55, 5:56**  
   Calculating qualifying amount, **5:46**  
   Conditions. See Resales to institutional buyers, below in this heading  
   Eligible purchasers. See Resales to institutional buyers, below in this heading  
   Eligible securities, nonfungible securities, **5:42**  
   Fiscal agency agreements for offerings, **5:61**  
   Information requirements, **5:49**  
   Institutional buyers. See Resales to institutional buyers, below in this subheading  
   Investment Company Act, **5:41, 5:53, 5:54**  
   Liquidity of Rule 144A securities, **5:54**  
   Most entities, resales to institutional buyers, **5:44**  
   Net capital rule, broker-dealer issues, **5:55, 5:56**  
   Nonfungible securities, **5:42**  
   Notice, **5:50**  
   Proof of eligibility, **5:47**  
   Purchase agreements for offerings, **5:61**  
   Qualified institutional buyers, **5:43**  
   Qualifying amount, calculating, **5:46**  
   Registered broker-dealers, **5:45**  
   Regulation S, interaction with, **5:51, 5:52**  
   Regulation T and Rule 144A, **5:56**  
   Remnant, **5:53**  
   Resales to institutional buyers  
     Generally, **5:40 et seq.**  
     Calculating qualifying amount, **5:46**  
     Conditions, generally, **5:41 et seq.**  
     Eligible purchasers, generally, **5:43 et seq.**

**PRIVATE PLACEMENT—Cont'd**

Rule 144A—Cont'd  
 Resales to institutional buyers—Cont'd  
   Eligible securities, nonfungible securities, **5:42**  
   Information requirements, **5:49**  
   Investment Company Act regulation, issuer cannot be subject to, **5:41**  
   Most entities, **5:44**  
   Nonfungible securities, **5:42**  
   Notice, **5:50**  
   Proof of eligibility, **5:47**  
   Qualified institutional buyers, **5:43**  
   Qualifying amount, calculating, **5:46**  
   Registered broker-dealers, **5:45**  
   Third parties, purchasers on behalf of, **5:48**  
   Third parties, purchasers on behalf of, **5:48**  
   Touche, **5:53**  
 Sale, notice of sale, Form D, **5:24**  
 Secondary markets trading systems, **5:70**  
 Section 4(1 1/2), private resales of private placement securities, **5:39**  
 Section 4(2) after Regulation D, **5:27**  
 Section 4(2) disclosure, **5:27**  
 Section 4(2) exemption, **5:3**  
 Settlement, clearance and settlement of PORTAL securities, **5:70**  
 Side-by-side offerings, **5:60**  
 Substantial compliance, **5:26**  
 Third parties, purchasers on behalf of, **5:48**  
 Touche, **5:53**

**PRIVATE RESALES**

Private placement, **5:39**

**PRIVATE RIGHT OF ACTION**

Investment advisers, **14:60**

**PRIVITIZATIONS OF GOVERNMENT OWNED ENTERPRISE**

Accounting and Financial Matters (this index)

**PRODUCT LIABILITY**

Accounting and financial matters, **7:249**

**PROFESSIONAL CONDUCT**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:151**

**PROFESSIONAL ENGAGEMENT PERIOD**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:65**

**PROFIT**

Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:24 to 11:28**

**PRO FORMA INFORMATION**

Accounting and financial matters, cross-border business combinations, **7:182**

**PROGRAM OPTIONS**

See **American Depositary Receipts** (this index)

**PROOF OF ELIGIBILITY**

Private placement, Rule 144A, **5:47**

**PROPOSED DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:215 to 7:217, 7:226**

**PROSPECTIVE UNDERWRITERS**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:72**

**PROSPECTUS**

See also **Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD); Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

Global offerings, registration, **10:15 to 10:17**

**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

**Securities Offering Reform** (this index)

**PROXY**

Accounting and financial matters, **7:109**

Exchange Act reporting, **6:35**

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:69**

**PROXY SOLICITATION**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:149, 3:153**

**PROXY STATEMENT**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:68, 3:105**

**PUBLIC AVAILABILITY**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:134, 7:15**

**PUBLIC COMPANIES**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:85**

**PUBLIC COMPANY ACCOUNTING OVERSIGHT BOARD (PCAOB)**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**PUBLIC DISCLOSURE**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:161, 6:91**

**PUBLICITY**

Global offerings, **10:20, 10:21, 10:62**

Private placement, Internet offerings, **5:75**

**Securities Offering Reform** (this index)

**PUBLICITY RULES**

**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS**

See also **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

American Depositary Receipts, **8:25, 8:26**

**Blue Sky Laws** (this index)

Equity. **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

Exchange Act reporting, **6:34**

Global offerings, **10:149**

Private placement, **5:65 et seq.**

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS OF EQUITY BY FOREIGN ISSUER INTO U.S.**

Generally, **2:1 et seq.**

Acceleration of effectiveness, **2:92**

Access equals delivery (Rule 172(b)), **2:95**

Advertisements, tombstone, **2:48**

Aftermarket prospectus delivery, dealer's exemption (Rule 174 and Section 4(3)), **2:98**

Agreements, **2:8, 2:9**

Annual budgets of foreign governments, **2:207**

Antifraud provisions of federal securities laws, **2:104**

Antimanipulation rules concerning securities offerings, Regulation M, **2:190**

Anti-spinning rules, **2:13**

Auctions, **2:111**

Auditor liability, mandatory financial reporting in interactive data format using XBRL, **2:222**

Automatic shelf registration for WKSIs

Generally, **2:143**

Base prospectus, omitted information, **2:145**

Duration of registration statement, **2:149**

Effectiveness, **2:148**

Eligibility, **2:144**

Fees, pay-as-you-go, **2:147**

Immediate effectiveness, **2:148**

Information omitted from base prospectus, **2:145**

Pay-as-you-go registration fees, **2:147**

Registration fees, **2:147**

Registration of securities, **2:146**

Registration statement, **2:149**

Background of XBRL rules, **2:211**

Beneficial ownership statements and tender offer schedules, **2:197**

Benefits of registration as foreign private issuer, **2:116**

Blue sky laws, **2:4, 2:5**

Broker-dealers

Electronic media, use of, **2:110**

Nonparticipating broker-dealers, publishing of research (Rule 137), **2:74**

Participating broker-dealers, publishing issuer-specific reports (Rule 139), **2:76**

Participating broker-dealers, publishing of research covering investment grade asset-backed securities (Rule 139a), **2:77**

Participating broker-dealers, publishing of research covering securities not being distributed (Rule 138), **2:75**

Research reports, **2:74 to 2:77**

Use of electronic media, **2:110**

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS OF EQUITY BY  
FOREIGN ISSUER INTO U.S.—Cont’d**

Cash dividends, **2:168**  
 Change of foreign private issuer registration status, **2:118**  
 Changes in offering size and estimated price range, **2:88**  
 Classification of issuers  
   Generally, **2:15 to 2:23**  
   Emerging growth companies, **2:23**  
   Nonreporting issuers, **2:22**  
   Seasoned issuers, **2:20**  
   Unseasoned issuers, **2:21**  
   Well-known seasoned issuers (WKSIS), below in this heading  
 Communications, **2:108, 2:109**  
 Concurrent U.S. and international offerings, **2:106**  
 Confirmation  
   Final prospectus delivery, **2:85**  
   Rule 172(a) confirmations without final prospectus, **2:97**  
   Use of electronic media, **2:102**  
 Contents of XBRL exhibits, **2:214**  
 Current technology, reporting in interactive data format using XBRL, **2:210**  
 Data tags, XBRL, **2:215**  
 Dealers’ exemption, **2:98**  
 Definitions  
   Free writing prospectus, **2:32, 2:62**  
   Reasonable investigation, **2:152**  
   Written communication, **2:31**  
 Delivery  
   Final prospectus, **2:83 to 2:100**  
   Use of electronic media, **2:102**  
 Deviations as insignificant, **2:185**  
 Disclosure, **2:112, 2:114, 2:167**  
 Distribution process, effect of Sarbanes-Oxley, **2:14**  
 Dividends, stock in lieu of cash dividends, **2:168**  
 Documents covered, XBRL exhibits, **2:214**  
 Due diligence investigation, **2:150 to 2:154**  
 EGC research reports, **2:82**  
 Electronic filing: EDGAR  
   Generally, **2:191 to 2:223**  
   Certification of meeting conditions for terminating Exchange Act registration, **2:195**  
 Foreign issuer forms and documents  
   Generally, **2:192 to 2:203**  
   Beneficial ownership statements and tender offer schedules, **2:197**  
   Certification, **2:195**  
   Exchange Act forms, **2:208**  
   Exhibits incorporated by reference, **2:202**  
   Form CB, **2:198**

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS OF EQUITY BY  
FOREIGN ISSUER INTO U.S.—Cont’d**

Electronic filing: EDGAR—Cont’d  
 Foreign issuer forms and documents—Cont’d  
   Form F-N and F-X, **2:199**  
   Form 6-K reports, **2:194**  
   Hardship exemptions, **2:203**  
   Registration statements and annual reports, governments, **2:196**  
   Registration statements and annual reports, private issuers, **2:193**  
   Reports of multinational development banks, **2:201**  
   Trust Indenture Act forms, **2:200**  
 Foreign language documents, treatment  
   Generally, **2:204 to 2:208**  
   Annual budgets of foreign governments, **2:207**  
   Electronic Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act, **2:223**  
   English summary option, **2:205**  
   Form 6-K, **2:206**  
   Securities Act and Exchange Act forms, **2:208**  
   Rule 12h-6 (Form 15F) reporting, **2:195**  
   Terminating Exchange Act registration, **2:195**  
 Electronic media, use of  
   Generally, **2:101 to 2:112**  
   Broker-dealer capacity, **2:110**  
   Concurrent U.S. and international offerings, **2:106**  
   Confirmation, delivery of, **2:102**  
   Delivery, **2:102**  
   Electronic road shows, **2:107**  
   Hyperlinked information, issuer responsibility under antifraud provisions of federal securities laws, **2:104**  
   Online offerings, **2:108, 2:109**  
   Presentation of live electronic auctions, **2:111**  
   Prospectus, **2:102, 2:112**  
   Registration, content of issuer web site when in, **2:105**  
   Section 5 issues arising from online offerings and related communications, including offers to buy, **2:108, 2:109**  
   Web site of issuer, content, **2:103 to 2:105**  
 Electronic road shows, **2:64, 2:107**  
 Electronic Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act, **2:223**  
 Eligibility, Rules 504 and 505, **2:183**  
 Employee stock offerings  
   Generally, **2:170 et seq.**  
   Eligibility  
     Rules 701, **2:180**  
     Rules 504 and 505, **2:183**  
   Exchange Act, **2:189**

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS OF EQUITY BY  
FOREIGN ISSUER INTO U.S.—Cont'd**

Employee stock offerings—Cont'd

- Exemptions
  - Generally, **2:178**
  - See also other entries throughout this heading
- Form S-8
  - Generally, **2:171 et seq.**
  - Eligibility of transaction, **2:173**
  - Eligible issuers, **2:172**
  - Information required in prospectus, **2:174**
  - Information required in registration statement, **2:175**
  - Prospectus, required information, **2:174**
  - Registration of additional securities, **2:177**
  - Registration statement, required information, **2:175**
  - Resales, **2:176**
- Registration of additional securities, **2:177**
- Resales
  - Form S-8, **2:176**
  - Rule 701 exemptions, **2:181**
  - Rules 504 and 505 exemptions, **2:186**
  - Unregistered plan securities, **2:187**
- Rule 701 exemptions
  - Generally, **2:179 to 2:181**
  - Eligibility, **2:180**
  - Resales, **2:181**
- Rules 504 and 505
  - Generally, **2:182 to 2:186**
  - Eligibility, **2:183**
  - Insignificant deviations, **2:185**
  - Required information, **2:184**
  - Resales, **2:186**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **2:189**
- State securities laws, **2:188**
- Unregistered plan securities, resale, **2:187**
- Unregistered plan securities not acquired under, resale, **2:187**
- English summary option, **2:205**
- Exchange, transactions on (Rule 153), **2:99**
- Exchange Act, **2:189**
- Exchange Act forms, **2:208**
- Exclusion from officer certifications, XBRL exhibits, **2:221**
- Exemptions
  - Employee stock offerings. See Employee stock offerings, above in this heading
  - Prospectus delivery, **2:94 to 2:100**
  - Rule 801. See Rule 801, below in this heading
- Exhibits, reporting in interactive data format using XBRL, **2:214 to 2:217**
- Federal law, generally, **2:3**
- Fees, pay-as-you-go registration fees, **2:147**
- Filing period, XBRL reporting, **2:216**

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS OF EQUITY BY  
FOREIGN ISSUER INTO U.S.—Cont'd**

- Final prospectus, receipt of, **2:85**
- FINRA Rule 5131, anti-spinning rules, **2:13**
- Foreign private issuer, **2:115**
- Form CB, **2:198**
- Former Rule 434, SIA approach, **2:93**
- Form F-6, **2:129**
- Form F-1. See Registration statement forms, below in this heading
- Form F-3. See Registration statement forms, below in this heading
- Form F-N and F-X, **2:199**
- Form 6-K, **2:206**
- Form 6-K reports, **2:194**
- Form S-8. See Employee stock offerings, above in this heading
- Forward-looking information, release by certain issuers, **2:37**
- Fraud, **2:104**
- Free writing prospectuses
  - Accompanying statutory prospectus, **2:56**
  - Communications included, **2:63 to 2:66**
  - Conditions, **2:54**
  - Curing failures, **2:61**
  - Definition, **2:32, 2:62**
  - Electronic roadshows, **2:64**
  - Excluded issuers, **2:52**
  - Excluded offerings, **2:52**
  - Filing, **2:55, 2:59, 2:61**
  - Immaterial failures, curing, **2:61**
  - Ineligible issuers, **2:52**
  - Information, **2:57**
  - Legend, **2:58, 2:61**
  - Media publications, **2:66**
  - Nonreporting issuers, **2:56**
  - Permitted use, **2:51 to 2:62**
  - Preceding statutory prospectus, **2:56**
  - Record retention, **2:60, 2:61**
  - Seasoned issuers, **2:53, 2:55**
  - Statutory prospectus, **2:55, 2:56**
  - Unintentional failures, curing, **2:61**
  - Unseasoned issuers, **2:56**
  - Web site information, **2:65**
  - WKSIs, **2:53, 2:55**
- Hardship exemptions, **2:203, 2:219**
- Hyperlinked information, issuer responsibility under antifraud provisions of federal securities laws, **2:104**
- Immediate takedowns from shelf registration, **2:91**
- Initial grace filing period, XBRL reporting, **2:216**
- Insignificant deviations, **2:185**
- Integration, Rule 801, **2:163**
- Internal memoranda, underwriters', **2:68**
- International offerings, **2:106**



## **PUBLIC OFFERINGS OF EQUITY BY FOREIGN ISSUER INTO U.S.—Cont'd**

Internet disclosure, Rule 801, **2:167**  
 Intersyndicate agreement, **2:10**  
 Investigation, due diligence, **2:150 to 2:154**  
 Issuers  
     Mandatory financial reporting in interactive data format using XBRL, **2:213**  
     Statutory scheme, Section 5, **2:41**  
 Live electronic auctions, **2:111**  
 Live road shows, **2:67**  
 Mandatory financial reporting in interactive data format using XBRL  
     Generally, **2:209 to 2:222**  
     Auditor liability, **2:222**  
     Background of XBRL rules, **2:211**  
     Contents of exhibits, **2:214**  
     Current technology, **2:210**  
     Data tags, **2:215**  
     Documents covered, **2:214**  
     Exclusion from officer certifications, **2:221**  
     Exhibits, **2:214 to 2:217**  
     Filing period, **2:216 to 2:218**  
     Hardship exemptions, **2:219**  
     Initial grace filing period, **2:216**  
     Issuers covered, **2:213**  
     Modified liability period for data, **2:220**  
     Noncompliance, **2:218**  
     Officer certifications, **2:221**  
     Summary of XBRL rules, **2:212**  
     Three-year phase in, **2:213**  
     Web site posting of data, **2:217**  
 Manual signatures, **2:89**  
 Mechanics of Section 11 due diligence investigation, **2:153**  
 Meetings with issuer or selling securityholder representative conducted offshore, **2:39**  
 Memoranda, underwriters' internal memoranda, **2:68**  
 Modified liability period for data, XBRL reporting, **2:220**  
 Noncompliance with mandatory XBRL reporting, **2:218**  
 Notice  
     Allocation without final prospectus (Rule 172(a)), **2:97**  
     Purchase in lieu of delivery of final prospectus (Rule 173), **2:96**  
     Waiting period, Rule 134 notices, **2:48**  
 Notice of allocation without final prospectus (Rule 172(a)), **2:97**  
 Offers to buy, **2:108**  
 Officer certifications, XBRL reporting, **2:221**  
 Offshore press activities  
     Global offerings by foreign issuers, **2:39**  
     Pre-filing period, **2:44**

## **PUBLIC OFFERINGS OF EQUITY BY FOREIGN ISSUER INTO U.S.—Cont'd**

Online offerings, **2:108, 2:109**  
 Oral offers, **2:47**  
 Periodic reporting, **2:164**  
 Post-effective period, **2:28, 2:69, 2:70, 2:84**  
 Pre-filing period  
     Generally, **2:40 to 2:44**  
     All issuers, **2:41, 2:42**  
     Bright-line exclusion, communications within 30 days, **2:42**  
     Foreign issuers, **2:44**  
     Limited public announcement, **2:41**  
     Offshore press activities, **2:44**  
     Oral offers by WKSIs within 30 days prior to filing, **2:43**  
     Publicity, **2:26**  
     30 days before filing registration statement, **2:42, 2:43**  
     Written offers by WKSIs within 30 days prior to filing, **2:43**  
 Pre-securities offering reform SEC guidance on release of factual information release by all issuers, **2:35**  
 Presentation of live electronic auctions, **2:111**  
 Press activities. Offshore press activities, above in this heading  
 Press conferences held offshore, **2:39**  
 Price, **2:88, 2:90**  
 Prospectus delivery  
     Access equals delivery, **2:95**  
     Aftermarket delivery, dealer's exemption (Rule 174 and Section 4(3)), **2:98**  
     Confirmations without final prospectus (Rule 172(a)), **2:97**  
     Dealers' exemption, **2:98**  
     Electronic, **2:102**  
     Employee stock offerings, Form S-8, **2:174**  
     Exchange, transactions on (Rule 153), **2:99**  
     Exemptions from requirements, **2:94 to 2:100**  
     Notice of allocation without final prospectus (Rule 172(a)), **2:97**  
     Notice of purchase in lieu of delivery of final prospectus (Rule 173), **2:96**  
     Rule 153, transactions on exchange or through registered trading facility, **2:99**  
     Rule 172(b), access equals delivery for Section 5(b)(2), **2:95**  
     T+3. See Prospectus delivery within T+3, below in this heading  
     Trading facility, transactions through (Rule 153), **2:99**  
 Prospectus delivery within T+3  
     Generally, **2:86 et seq.**  
     Acceleration of effectiveness, **2:92**

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS OF EQUITY BY  
FOREIGN ISSUER INTO U.S.—Cont'd**

- Prospectus delivery within T+3—Cont'd
  - Changes in offering size and estimated price range, **2:88**
  - Former Rule 434, SIA approach, **2:93**
  - Immediate takedowns from shelf registration, **2:91**
  - Manual signatures, **2:89**
  - Price range, changes in, **2:88**
  - Pricing period, Rule 430A, **2:90**
  - Registrations, immediate takedowns from shelf registration, **2:91**
  - Re-ordering of prospectus contents, **2:87**
  - Rule 430A pricing period, **2:90**
  - Shelf registrations, immediate takedowns from, **2:91**
  - SIA approach, former Rule 434, **2:93**
  - Signatures, **2:89**
  - Size, changes in, **2:88**
  - Takedowns from shelf registration, immediate, **2:91**
- Prospectus disclosure, **2:112**
- Publicity rules
  - Generally, **2:24 et seq.**
  - After effectiveness of registration statement, **2:28**
  - During any offering period, **2:33 to 2:39**
  - Business combinations and similar transactions, **2:34**
  - Communications for business combinations, **2:34**
  - Consequences of violation of restrictions, **2:30**
  - Current restrictions, **2:29**
  - Definitions
    - Free writing prospectus, **2:32**
    - Written communication, **2:31**
  - Before effectiveness of registration statement, **2:27**
  - Factual information release by all issuers, **2:35, 2:36**
  - Former restrictions, **2:29**
  - Forward-looking information, release by certain issuers, **2:37**
  - Free writing prospectus, definition, **2:32**
  - Meetings with issuer or selling securityholder representative conducted offshore, **2:39**
  - Offshore press activities for global offerings by foreign issuers, **2:39**
  - Post-effective period, **2:28, 2:69, 2:70**
  - Pre-filing period, **2:26, 2:40 to 2:44**
  - Pre-securities offering reform SEC guidance on release of factual information release by all issuers, **2:35**
  - Press conferences held offshore, **2:39**
  - Reasons underlying restrictions, **2:29**

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS OF EQUITY BY  
FOREIGN ISSUER INTO U.S.—Cont'd**

- Publicity rules—Cont'd
  - Registration statement
    - Post-effective period, **2:28**
    - Pre-filing period, **2:26**
    - Waiting period, **2:27**
  - Regulation FD, **2:71**
  - Research reports, **2:38, 2:72 to 2:82**
  - Research safe harbors, **2:38**
  - Restrictions, **2:29, 2:30**
  - Safe harbors
    - Offshore press activities, **2:39**
    - Release of factual information release by all issuers, **2:36**
    - Research reports, **2:38**
  - Statutory scheme, Section 5, **2:25**
  - Types of offers permitted, waiting period, **2:46**
  - Violation of restrictions, **2:30**
  - Waiting period, **2:27, 2:45 to 2:68**
  - Written communication, definition, **2:31**
  - Written press-related materials released offshore, **2:39**
- Reasonable investigation defined, **2:152**
- Receipt of final prospectus with or before confirmation or delivery, **2:85**
- Red herring, Rule 430 preliminary prospectuses, **2:49**
- Registration
  - Generally, **2:3 et seq., 2:113 et seq.**
  - Benefits of status as foreign private issuer, **2:116**
  - Blue sky laws, **2:4**
  - Certification of meeting conditions for terminating Exchange Act registration, **2:195**
  - Change of foreign private issuer status, **2:118**
  - Distribution process, **2:14**
  - Electronic media, use of, **2:105**
  - Employee stock offerings, Form S-8, **2:177**
  - Federal law, generally, **2:2**
  - Foreign issuer forms and documents
    - Certification of meeting conditions for terminating Exchange Act registration, **2:195**
    - Rule 12h-6 (Form 15F) reporting, **2:195**
    - Terminating Exchange Act registration, **2:195**
  - Foreign private issuer, **2:115**
  - Integrated disclosure system, **2:114**
  - Prospectus delivery within T+3, **2:91**
  - Rule 801 exemption. See Rule 801, below in this heading
  - Rule 12h-6 (Form 15F) reporting, **2:195**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley, effect on registration and distribution process, **2:14**

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS OF EQUITY BY  
FOREIGN ISSUER INTO U.S.—Cont'd**

## Registration—Cont'd

Spinoffs, **2:169**State law, **2:4, 2:5**

## Statement forms

Generally, **2:119 et seq.**

## Form F-1

Generally, **2:127, 2:128**Eligibility requirements, **2:127**Information required in prospectus, **2:128**Required information, **2:128**Rights offerings, **2:156**

## Form F-2

Rights offerings, **2:156**

## Form F-3

Generally, **2:120 et seq.**Additional securities after effectiveness,  
**2:126**Eligible registrants, **2:121**Eligible transactions, **2:122**Information required in prospectus, **2:123**Information required in registration state-  
ment, **2:124**Rights offerings, **2:156**Signatures, **2:125**Form F-6, **2:129**Signatures, **2:125**Statements and annual reports, governments,  
**2:196**Statements and annual reports, private issuers,  
**2:193**Stock in lieu of cash dividends, **2:168**Terminating Exchange Act registration, **2:195**Tracking stock, **2:169**Regulation FD, publicity rules, **2:71**

## Regulation M

Antimanipulation rules concerning securities  
offerings, **2:190**Research reports, **2:77**Rule 801, rights offerings, **2:165**Re-ordering of prospectus contents, **2:87**Reporting, periodic, Rule 801, **2:164**Reporting research. Research reports, below in  
this headingReports of multinational development banks,  
**2:201**

## Resales

Employee stock offerings

Form S-8, **2:176**Rule 701 exemptions, **2:181**Rules 504 and 505 exemptions, **2:186**Rule 801, **2:161**Rules 504 and 505, **2:186**

## Research reports

EGC research reports, **2:82****PUBLIC OFFERINGS OF EQUITY BY  
FOREIGN ISSUER INTO U.S.—Cont'd**

## Research reports—Cont'd

Issuer-specific reports, publishing by  
participating broker-dealers (Rule 139),  
**2:76**Liability for contents of research reports  
covered by research safe, **2:76**Non-affiliated broker-dealers, publishing  
research of covered investment funded by  
(Rule 139b), **2:78**Nonparticipating broker-dealers, publishing of  
research (Rule 137), **2:74**Participating broker-dealers, publishing issuer-  
specific reports (Rule 139), **2:76**Participating broker-dealers, publishing of  
research covering investment grade asset-  
backed securities (Rule 139a), **2:77**Participating broker-dealers, publishing of  
research covering securities not being  
distributed (Rule 138), **2:75**Potential liability for contents of reports  
covered by research safe, **2:79**Regulation M, **2:77, 2:80**Safe harbors, **2:38, 2:72 to 2:82**

## Rights offerings

Generally, **2:155 et seq.**

## Exemptions

Generally, **2:157**Registration on Form F-3, F-2, or F-1, **2:156**

Rule 801 exemption from registration

Internet disclosure, **2:167**Regulation M, **2:165**Road shows, **2:64, 2:67, 2:107**Rule 504, **2:182 to 2:186**Rule 505, **2:182 to 2:186**

## Rule 801

Generally, **2:157 et seq.**Eligibility of transaction, **2:159**Eligible issuers, **2:158**Exemption from registration. See entries  
throughout this headingInformation required for shareholders, **2:160**Integration, **2:163**Internet disclosure, **2:167**Liability, **2:162**Periodic reporting, **2:164**Regulation M, **2:165**Resales, **2:161**State securities laws, **2:166**Rule 137, publishing of research by nonparti-  
cipating broker-dealers, **2:74**Rule 138, publishing of research by participating  
broker-dealers, **2:75**Rule 139, participating broker-dealers, publishing  
issuer-specific reports, **2:76**

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS OF EQUITY BY  
FOREIGN ISSUER INTO U.S.—Cont'd**

- Rule 153, transactions on exchange or through registered trading facility, **2:99**
- Rule 172(b), access to final prospectus equals delivery for Section 5(b)(2), **2:95**
- Rule 415, shelf registration, **2:131 to 2:136**
- Rule 430A pricing period, **2:90**
- Rule 701 exemptions. See Employee stock offerings, above in this heading
- Rule 134 notices, **2:48**
- Rule 430 preliminary prospectuses, **2:49**
- Safe harbors
  - Offshore press activities, **2:39**
  - Release of factual information release by all issuers, **2:36**
  - Research reports
    - Publicity, **2:38**
    - Waiting period, **2:72 to 2:76**
  - Sales-related activity, **2:40 to 2:44**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **2:14, 2:154, 2:164, 2:189**
  - Section 5 issues arising from online offerings and related communications, including offers to buy, **2:108, 2:109**
  - Securities Act and Exchange Act forms, **2:208**
  - Securities Act Section 5(b)
    - Access equals delivery (Rule 172(b)), **2:95**
    - Confirmations without final prospectus (Rule 172(a)), **2:97**
    - Exemptions, **2:94 to 2:100**
    - Notice of allocation without final prospectus (Rule 172(a)), **2:97**
    - Prospectus delivery requirement exemptions, **2:94 to 2:100**
    - Rule 172(b), access to final prospectus equals delivery for Section 5(b)(2), **2:95**
  - Selected dealers agreement, **2:11**
  - Selling process, **2:12**
  - Shelf registration
    - Generally, **2:130 to 2:149**
    - Automatic shelf registration for WKSIs, above in this heading
    - Base prospectuses information, **2:138**
    - General procedures, **2:137 to 2:142**
    - Liability for prospectus supplements, **2:141**
    - Medium-term note programs, **2:142**
    - Post-effective identification of selling securityholders, **2:139**
    - Prospectus delivery, **2:91**
    - Prospectus supplements, **2:138**
    - Registration statement, deemed information, **2:140**
    - Rule 415
      - Generally, **2:131 to 2:136**
      - At-the-market offerings, **2:135**
      - Duration of registration statement, **2:134**

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS OF EQUITY BY  
FOREIGN ISSUER INTO U.S.—Cont'd**

- Shelf registration—Cont'd
  - Rule 415—Cont'd
    - Eligible transactions, **2:132**
    - Form SF-3 eligibility requirements, **2:132.10**
    - Issuer undertakings, **2:136**
    - Section 11 liability for prospectus supplements, **2:141**
    - Supplement to prospectus, liability, **2:141**
  - Shelf registrations, immediate takedowns from, **2:91**
  - SIA approach, former Rule 434, **2:93**
  - Signatures, **2:89, 2:125, 2:223**
  - Size, changes in, **2:88**
  - Special considerations for foreign registrants including offshore press activities, **2:44**
  - Spinoffs, registration issues, **2:169**
  - State laws, **2:4, 2:5, 2:166, 2:188**
  - Statutory scheme
    - Due diligence investigation, **2:151**
    - Issuers, **2:41**
    - Offshore press activities, special considerations for foreign registrants including, **2:44**
    - Post-effective period, **2:28, 2:69, 2:70, 2:84**
    - Pre-filing period, **2:40 to 2:44**
    - Press activities, special considerations for foreign registrants including, **2:44**
    - Prospectus delivery. See Prospectus delivery within T+3, above in this heading
    - Receipt of final prospectus with or before confirmation or delivery, **2:85**
    - Sales-related activity, **2:40 to 2:44**
    - Section 5, generally, **2:25 et seq.**
    - Special considerations for foreign registrants including offshore press activities, **2:44**
    - Waiting period. See Waiting period, below in this heading
- Stock in lieu of cash dividends, **2:168**
- Summary of XBRL rules, **2:212**
- Summary prospectuses, **2:50**
- Supplementary sales literature, **2:70**
- Takedowns from shelf registration, immediate, **2:91**
- Three-year phase in, XBRL reporting, **2:213**
- Tombstone advertisements, **2:48**
- Tracking stock, registration issues, **2:169**
- Trading facility, transactions through (Rule 153), **2:99**
- Trust Indenture Act forms, **2:200**
- Underwriters' internal memoranda, **2:68**
- Underwriting process
  - Generally, **2:2, 2:6 et seq.**
  - Agreements, **2:8, 2:9**

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS OF EQUITY BY  
FOREIGN ISSUER INTO U.S.—Cont’d**

- Underwriting process—Cont’d
  - Documents, **2:7 to 2:11**
  - Intersyndicate agreement, **2:10**
  - Methods, **2:6**
  - Selected dealers agreement, **2:11**
- Waiting period
  - Generally, **2:45 et seq.**
  - Advertisements, tombstone, **2:48**
  - Electronic road shows, **2:64**
  - Free writing prospectuses, above in this heading
  - Internal memoranda, underwriters’, **2:68**
  - Live road shows, **2:67**
  - Memoranda, underwriters’ internal memoranda, **2:68**
  - Oral offers, **2:47**
  - Red herring, Rule 430 preliminary prospectuses, **2:49**
  - Road shows, **2:64, 2:67**
  - Rule 134 notices, **2:48**
  - Rule 430 preliminary prospectuses, **2:49**
  - Safe harbor for research reports, **2:72 to 2:76**
  - Summary prospectuses, **2:50**
  - Supplementary sales literature, **2:70**
  - Tombstone advertisements, **2:48**
  - Underwriters’ internal memoranda, **2:68**
- Web site of issuer, content, **2:103 to 2:105**
- Web site posting of data, XBRL reporting, **2:217**
- Well-known seasoned issuers (WKSI)s
  - Automatic shelf registration
    - Generally, **2:143**
    - Base prospectus, omitted information, **2:145**
    - Duration of registration statement, **2:149**
    - Effectiveness, **2:148**
    - Eligibility, **2:144**
    - Fees, pay-as-you-go, **2:147**
    - Immediate effectiveness, **2:148**
    - Information omitted from base prospectus, **2:145**
    - Pay-as-you-go registration fees, **2:147**
    - Registration fees, **2:147**
    - Registration of securities, **2:146**
    - Registration statement, **2:149**
  - Determination date for WKSI status, **2:19**
  - Free writing prospectuses, **2:53, 2:55**
  - Ineligible issuers, **2:17**
  - Majority-owned subsidiaries, **2:18**
  - Pre-filing period, **2:43**
  - Qualification requirements, generally, **2:16**
  - Written offers by WKSI)s within 30 days prior to filing, **2:43**
- Written communication, definition, **2:31**
- Written press-related materials released offshore, **2:39**

**PUBLIC REPRIMAND AND DELISTING**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:194**

**PUBLIC STATEMENTS**

- Accounting and financial matters, **7:262**

**PUBLIC UTILITY HOLDING COMPANY ACT  
OF 1935 (PUHCA)**

- Generally, **1:5**

**PUBLISHERS AND AUTHORS**

- Investment advisers, exclusions from definitions, **14:17**

**PURCHASE AGREEMENTS**

- Private placement, Rule 144A offerings, **5:61**

**PURCHASE IN LIEU OF DELIVERY**

- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:96**

**QUALIFICATIONS**

- Beneficial ownership reports, qualified institutional investors, **11:6**
- Investment advisers, “qualified clients” defined, **14:50**
- Private placement, **5:43, 5:46**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **6:81**
- Trust Indenture Act** (this index)

**QUALIFIED LEGAL COMPLIANCE  
COMMITTEE REGIME**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:161 to 6:164**

**QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:223**

**QUALITY CONTROL STANDARDS**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:19**

**QUANTITATIVE DISCLOSURES**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:221 to 7:223**

**QUANTITATIVE RECONCILIATION**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:98**

**QUARTERLY EVALUATIONS**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:61**

**QUARTERLY REPORTS**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:70**

**QUEBEC**

- Canadian MJSD, language requirements for filings made in Quebec, **12:113**

**QUORUM**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:148, 3:152**

**QUOTATION SYSTEMS**

- Third-party quotation systems, **13:110**

**REACTIVATED STATUS**

- Large trader Form 13H requirements, **11:60**



**REAL-TIME DISCLOSURES**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**REASONABLE INVESTIGATION**

Defined, **2:152**

**REBUTTABLE PRESUMPTION**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:66**

**RECEIPTS**

See also **American Depositary Receipts** (this index)

Canadian MJSD, **12:115**

**RECEIVABLES**

Confirmation of receivables, **7:42**

**RECOMMENDATIONS**

Blue Sky Law, private placements in U.S. by foreign investors, **15:48**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:90**

**RECONCILIATION**

Accounting and financial matters, **7:122 et seq., 7:166, 7:167**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:97, 6:98**

**RECORDKEEPING**

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

Global offerings, Regulation M, **10:147**

Investment advisers, **14:53**

Listing requirements, **3:29**

**REDEMPTIONS**

Global offerings, redemption by commodity pools or limited partnerships, **10:126**

**RED HERRING**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:49**

**REFERENCE, INCORPORATION BY**

Canadian MJSD, **12:134**

**REFERENCE SECURITIES**

Global offerings, Regulation M

Rule 101, **10:78**

Rule 102, **10:117**

**REGISTERED INVESTMENT COMPANIES**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**REGISTRATION**

American Depositary Receipts, **8:18 to 8:21**

Blue sky laws, **15:5 to 15:7**

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

Exchange Act. **Securities Exchange Act (1934)** (this index)

**Global Offerings** (this index)

**Investment Advisers** (this index)

**Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD)** (this index)

**REGISTRATION—Cont'd**

Private placement, **5:45**

**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

**Regulation S** (this index)

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

Securities, **1:28**

**Securities Exchange Act (1934)** (this index)

**Shelf Registration** (this index)

**Sovereigns** (this index)

**Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

Trust Indenture Act, **4:38**

**REGULATION BTR**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:133, 6:134**

**REGULATION D**

See also **Private Placement** (this index)

Blue Sky Law, private placements in U.S. by foreign investors, **15:44 to 15:46**

Multijurisdictional disclosure system (MJSD), information requirements, **12:31**

Private placement, documentation, **5:66**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., employee stock offerings, resale of unregistered plan securities not acquired under Regulation D, **2:187**

**REGULATION 14D**

**Bids and Bidding** (this index)

**Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

**REGULATION FD**

Private placement, **5:31**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., publicity rules, **2:71**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:100**

**REGULATION G**

See **Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**REGULATION M**

See also **Global Offerings** (this index)

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:56**

Private placement, **5:72**

**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

**Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

**REGULATION S**

Generally, **9:1 et seq.**

ADR facilities during distribution compliance period, **9:35**

After distribution compliance period, **9:38 to 9:40**

Background, **9:2**

Category 1, Rule 903, Issuer Safe Harbor, **9:11**

**REGULATION S—Cont'd**

Category 2, Rule 903, Issuer Safe Harbor, **9:12**  
 Category 3, Rule 903, Issuer Safe Harbor, **9:13**  
 Conditions, general, **9:7 to 9:9**  
 Convertible debt securities, **9:16**  
 Debt, convertible debt securities, **9:16**  
 Debt, guaranteed, **9:15**  
 Debt offerings by domestic issuers, **9:39**  
 Debt offerings by reporting issuers or nonreporting foreign issuers, Category 2, **9:12**  
 Debt securities, **9:24**  
 Definitions  
   Generally, **9:23 et seq.**  
   Debt securities, **9:24**  
   Designated offshore securities market, **9:25**  
   Distribution compliance period, **9:26**  
   Distributor, **9:27**  
   Domestic issuer and foreign issuer, **9:28**  
   Foreign issuer, **9:28**  
   Offering restrictions, **9:29**  
   Reporting issuer, **9:30**  
   Substantial U.S. market interest, **9:31**  
   U.S. person, **9:32**  
 Designated offshore securities market, **9:25**  
 Directed selling efforts, **9:9**  
 Distribution compliance period, **9:26, 9:36 to 9:40**  
 Distribution compliance period. See Resales in U.S. or to U.S. persons during and after distribution compliance period, below in this heading  
 During distribution compliance period, **9:37**  
 Distributors, **9:21, 9:27**  
 Domestic issuers, **9:11, 9:28, 9:39, 9:40**  
 Equity offerings by domestic issuers, **9:40**  
 Equity offerings by reporting foreign issuers, Category 2, **9:12**  
 Exchange, resale on nondesignated exchange, Rule 904, **9:20**  
 Financings, **9:14 to 9:18**  
 Foreign issuers  
   Defined, **9:28**  
   Resales in U.S. or to U.S. persons, **9:39**  
   Rights offerings by, **9:46**  
   Rule 903, issuer safe harbor, **9:11 et seq.**  
 General conditions, **9:7 to 9:9**  
 Global offerings, sale of bonds outside United States, **10:118**  
 Guaranteed debt, **9:15**  
 History, **9:2**  
 Internet, offshore internet offerings, **9:47**  
 Investment companies, **9:45**  
 Issuance of notice and proposed regulations, bearer obligation provisions, **9:51**  
 Limitations, resale, **9:22**

**REGULATION S—Cont'd**

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:67**  
 Nondesignated exchange, resales on, Rule 904, **9:20**  
 Nonintegration, **9:42**  
 Obligations considered to be in registered form, **9:50**  
 Offering restrictions defined, **9:29**  
 Offshore internet offerings, **9:47**  
 Offshore securities market, **9:25**  
 Offshore transactions, **9:8**  
 Preliminary notes, **9:4**  
 Private placement, Rule 144A, **5:51, 5:52**  
 Problematic practices under Regulation S, **9:34**  
 Registration. See Securities Act, offers and sales without registration under, below in this heading  
 Registration-required obligations  
   Debt obligations for sale only to non-U.S. persons, **9:49**  
   Tax consequences, **9:48**  
 Release 4708, **9:2**  
 Reporting, **9:43**  
 Reporting issuers, **9:12, 9:30**  
 Resales  
   After distribution compliance period, **9:38 to 9:40**  
   Debt offerings by domestic issuers, **9:39**  
   During distribution compliance period, **9:37**  
   Domestic issuers, **9:39, 9:40**  
   Equity offerings by domestic issuers, **9:40**  
   Foreign issuers, **9:39**  
   Rule 904, Resale Safe Harbor, **9:19 to 9:21**  
   Rule 905, resale limitations, **9:22**  
   U.S., resale in or to U.S. persons, generally, **9:36 et seq.**  
 Rights offerings by foreign issuers, **9:46**  
 Rule 901, **9:5**  
 Rule 904, **9:6, 9:19 to 9:21**  
 Rule 903: Issuer Safe Harbor  
   Generally, **9:10 et seq.**  
   Category 1, **9:11**  
   Category 2, **9:12**  
   Category 3, **9:13**  
   Convertible debt securities, **9:16**  
   Debt, convertible debt securities, **9:16**  
   Debt, guaranteed, **9:15**  
   Debt offerings by reporting issuers or nonreporting foreign issuers, Category 2, **9:12**  
   Domestic issuers, offerings by, Category 1, **9:11**  
   Equity offerings by reporting foreign issuers, Category 2, **9:12**  
   Financings, **9:14 to 9:18**

## REGULATION S—Cont'd

- Rule 903: Issuer Safe Harbor—Cont'd
  - Foreign issuers, **9:11 et seq.**
  - Guaranteed debt, **9:15**
  - Reporting issuers, **9:12**
  - Securities Act, offers and sales without registration under, **9:6**
  - Unit securities, **9:18**
  - Warrants, **9:17**
- Rule 905, resale limitations, **9:22**
- Safe harbor
  - Protections, **9:33**
  - Rule 903. See Rule 903, issuer safe harbor, above
  - Rule 904, Resale Safe Harbor, **9:19 to 9:21**
  - Securities Act, offers and sales without registration under, **9:6**
- Securities Act, offers and sales without registration under
  - Generally, **9:3 et seq.**
  - Preliminary notes, **9:4**
  - Rule 901, **9:5**
  - Rule 903, **9:6**
  - Rule 904, **9:6**
  - Safe harbors, **9:6**
- Substantial U.S. market interest defined, **9:31**
- Tax consequences, “registration-required obligations,” **9:48**
- Trust Indenture Act, interaction with, **9:44**
- Unit securities, **9:18**
- U.S. market defined, **9:31**
- U.S. persons
  - Defined, **9:32**
  - Resales. See Resales in U.S. or to U.S. persons during and after distribution compliance period, above in this heading
- Warrants, **9:17**

## REGULATION T

- See also **Broker-Dealers** (this index)
- Private placement, Rule 144A, **5:56**

## REGULATORY SCHEME

- Sovereigns, **4:10**

## RELATED PARTY

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:112, 3:120**

## RELEASE (2003)

- Accounting and Financial Matters** (this index)

## RELEASE 4708

- Regulation S, **9:2**

## RELEASES

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:99, 6:109 to 6:111**

## REMEDiation

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **6:83**

## REMNANT

- Private placement, Rule 144A, **5:53**

## RE-ORDERING

- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:87**

## REPACKAGED PRODUCTS

- See **Securities** (this index)

## REPORTS AND REPORTING

- Generally, **11:1 et seq.**
- See also **Interim reports and financial statements** (this index)
- Accounting and Financial Matters** (this index)
- American Stock Exchange, **3:15, 3:16**
- Beneficial ownership reporting. **Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)
- Canadian MJSD, **12:109**
- Institutional investment managers reporting. **Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)
- Large trader reporting. **Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)
- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:46 to 12:48**
- Multinational development banks, **4:22**
- Nasdaq Stock Exchange, **3:31, 3:32**
- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:164**
- Regulation S, **9:12, 9:30, 9:43**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)
- Securities Exchange Act (1934)** (this index)
- Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)
- Trust Indenture Act, **4:44**

## REPRIMAND

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:194**

## RESALE

- See also **Private Placement; Regulation S** (this index)
- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:161, 2:176, 2:181, 2:186, 2:187**
- Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

## RESEARCH

- Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:94**
- Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

## RESEARCH ANALYSTS

- Conflicts of interest. See **Broker-Dealers** (this index)

## RESEARCH REPORTS

- Foreign broker-dealers, exemptions for, **13:95, 13:96**

**RESIDENCE**

Broker-dealers, U.S. persons resident abroad,  
**13:109**

**RESPONSE**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:159**

**RESTRICTED PERIOD**

See **Global Offerings** (this index)

**RESTRICTED SECURITIES**

Private placement, **5:4**

**RESTRICTIONS**

See also **Limitations** (this index)

Global offerings, **10:20**

Private placement, **5:23, 5:58 et seq.**

Regulation S, **9:29**

**RESTRICTIVE LEGEND**

Private placement, **5:37**

**RESTRUCTURING ACTIVITIES**

Accounting and financial matters, **7:244, 7:291**

**RETALIATION**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:183**

**RETENTION OF WORKPAPERS**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**RIGHTS OFFERINGS**

See also **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD),  
**12:4, 12:25**

Regulation S, **9:46**

**ROAD SHOWS**

Private placement, Internet offerings, **5:77**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:64, 2:67, 2:107**

**RULE 3-05**

Financial statements, business combinations,  
Rule 3-05, pooling of interests under home  
country GAAP, **7:165**

**RULE 100**

Global offerings, Regulation M, **10:66**

**RULE 101**

See **Global Offerings** (this index)

**RULE 102**

See **Global Offerings** (this index)

**RULE 102(e)**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:104**

**RULE 103**

Global offerings, Regulation M, **10:137, 10:138**

**RULE 104**

See **Global Offerings** (this index)

**RULE 105**

Global offerings, Regulation M, **10:149**

**RULE 135**

Tender offers, registered exchange offers and  
Securities Act communications exemptions,  
**11:95**

**RULE 137**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:74**

**RULE 138**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:75**

**RULE 139**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:76**

**RULE 144**

Private placement, **5:34 et seq.**

**RULE 145**

Tender offers, registered exchange offers and  
Securities Act communications exemptions,  
**11:95**

**RULE 152**

Private placement, documentation, **5:66**

**RULE 153**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:99**

**RULE 155**

Private placement, integration of private and pub-  
lic offerings, **5:67**

**RULE 162**

Tender offers, registered exchange offers, **11:96**

**RULE 165**

Tender offers, registered exchange offers and  
Securities Act communications exemptions,  
**11:95**

**RULE 166**

Tender offers, registered exchange offers and  
Securities Act communications exemptions,  
**11:95**

**RULE 172(a)**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:97**

**RULE 172(b)**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into  
U.S., **2:95**

**RULE 173**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:96**

**RULE 174**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:98**

**RULE 415**

Canadian MJSD, **12:91, 12:97**  
Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S., **2:131 to 2:136**

**RULE 425**

Tender offers, registered exchange offers and Securities Act communications exemptions, **11:95**

**RULE 490-493**

Sovereigns, **4:11**

**RULE 506**

See also **Private Placement** (this index)  
Blue Sky Law, **15:44, 15:47**

**RULE 801**

See **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

**RULE 802**

Tender offers, international tender offers and business combinations involving foreign targets—exemption, **11:161**

**RULE 901**

Regulation S, **9:5**

**RULE 903**

See **Regulation S** (this index)

**RULE 434 (FORMER), SIA APPROACH**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:93**

**RULE 904: RESALE SAFE HARBOR**

Regulation S, **9:6, 9:19 to 9:21**

**RULE 905: RESALE LIMITATIONS**

Regulation S, **9:22**

**RULE 10A-3**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:107**

**RULE 144A**

See also **Private Placement** (this index)  
Blue Sky Law, **15:52, App. 15E**  
Global offerings, Regulation M  
Rule 101, **10:101**  
Rule 102, **10:123**

**RULE 504 AND 505**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:182 to 2:186**

**RULE 430A OFFERINGS**

Canadian MJSD, **12:97**

**RULE 430A PRICING PERIOD**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:90**

**RULE 430A PRICING PROSPECTUS, SUPPLEMENTS**

Canadian MJSD, **12:104**

**RULE 10b-18**

See **Global Offerings** (this index)

**RULE 139B**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:78**

**RULE 14d-9**

Tender offers, target disclosure requirements in third-party tender offers subject to Regulation 14D, **11:86, 11:87**

**RULE 13e-1**

Tender offers, target disclosure requirements in third-party tender offers subject to Regulation 14D, **11:88**

**RULE 13e-3**

Self-tenders, going private, **11:191**

**RULE 13e-4**

Self-tenders, issuer tender offers, **11:192**

**RULE 701 EXEMPTIONS**

Foreign issuers, generally. See **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

**RULE 13f-1 AND FORM 13F**

Beneficial ownership reporting. **Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)  
Office of Inspector General, review of SEC's Section 13(f) reporting requirements, **11:43**

**RULE 12g3-2(b)**

See **Securities Exchange Act (1934)** (this index)

**RULE 430 PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUSES**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., waiting period, **2:49**

**SAFE HARBOR**

**Global Offerings** (this index)  
Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:66**  
**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)  
**Regulation S** (this index)  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:126, 7:212**

**SALES**

American Depositary Receipts, **8:13**



## **SALES—Cont'd**

- Blue Sky Law, definitions, **15:10**
- Global offerings, **10:99, 10:109, 10:149**
- Private placement, **5:24**
- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:12, 2:40 to 2:44**

## **SALESPERSON**

- Blue Sky Law, broker-dealer and agent (salesperson) registration provisions, **15:6**

## **SANCTIONS**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **SARBANES-OXLEY ACT**

- Accelerated filing deadlines for Forms 10-K and 10-Q, **6:113, 6:117**
- Access to periodic and current reports, disclosure concerning, **6:115**
- Accommodations of foreign private issuers, **3:87**
- Accountants. Auditors, below in this heading
- Accounting. Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB), below in this heading
- Accounting profession, effect of SOX on, **7:5**
- Acquisitions, **3:160**
- Actuarial services, **7:75**
- Additional audit committee requirements, **3:108**
- Adjustments, **7:99**
- Administration of engagement, **7:80**
- Administrative and civil remedies, **6:170**
- Advances, **6:124**
- Advisors, **3:96**
- Affiliated person, **3:83**
- Affirmations, **3:193**
- Aggregate contractual commitments. Issuer reporting and disclosure, below in this heading
- Alternative accounting treatments, **7:58**
- Amendments, **3:135 to 3:137, 3:169, 6:49, 6:114**
- Annual meetings, **3:147, 3:151**
- Annual reports, **3:70, 3:104, 6:58, 6:109 to 6:111**
- Appeal and review. Issuer reporting and disclosure, below in this heading
- Applications, **7:13**
- Appraisal or valuation services, **7:74**
- Approval. Shareholder approval requirements, below in this heading
- Assessment, **6:62**
- Assumptions, **7:219**
- Attempts, **6:185**
- Attestations, **6:62**
- Attorneys
  - Generally, **6:151 to 6:165**
  - Covered attorneys, **6:152 to 6:155**
  - Ethics, code of, **3:130**
  - In the representation of issuer, **6:153**

## **SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Attorneys—Cont'd
  - Investigating and defending attorneys, obligations of, **6:165**
  - Issuer, **6:154**
  - Professional conduct standards of SEC, **6:151**
  - Qualified legal compliance committee regime, **6:162**
- Reporting obligation
  - Generally, **6:157 to 6:164**
  - Attorney, qualified legal compliance committee regime for, **6:162**
  - CLO, qualified legal compliance committee regime for, **6:163**
  - Qualified legal compliance committee regime, **6:161 to 6:164**
  - Step one, report to CLO or CLO and CEO, **6:158**
  - Step two, inquiry and response by CLO, **6:159**
  - Step three, taking report up-the-ladder, **6:160**
- Representing registered investment companies, broker-dealers, underwriters, and other financial organizations, **6:155**
- Triggering reporting obligation, **6:156**
- Attributes, **3:124**
- Audit client, **7:64, 7:72**
- Audit committee
  - Generally, **3:80 to 3:130**
  - Affiliated person, **3:83**
  - Communication with
    - Generally, **7:56 to 7:60**
    - Alternative accounting treatments, **7:58**
    - Critical accounting policies and practices, **7:57**
    - Other material written communications, **7:59**
    - Registered investment companies, **7:60**
- Compensatory fees, **3:82**
- Compliance dates, **3:106**
- Conflicts of interest. Communication with, above this group
- Disclosure changes, **3:104 to 3:106**
- Exemptions from independence requirement
  - Generally, **3:84 to 3:93**
  - Controlling shareholder representation, **3:89**
  - Disclosure of exemption from independence requirement, **3:92**
  - Employee representation, **3:88**
  - Foreign government representation, **3:90**
  - Foreign private issuer exemptions and accommodations, **3:87**
  - Newly public companies, **3:85**
  - Overlapping board relationships, **3:86**
  - Requests for independent exemptions, **3:93**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Audit committee—Cont'd
  - Exemptions from independence requirement—Cont'd
    - SEC authority, generally, **3:84 to 3:93**
    - Two-tier board systems, **3:91**
  - Expert. Financial expert, below this group
  - Fees and pre-approval policies, disclosure of, **7:90**
  - Financial expert
    - Generally, **3:121 to 3:127**
    - Attributes, **3:124**
    - Compliance dates, **3:127**
    - Disclosure required, **3:122**
    - Experience, **3:125**
    - Reports to committee, **3:128**
    - Safe harbor from liability, **3:126**
    - Timing and location of disclosure, **3:123**
  - Governance, generally, **3:80 to 3:130**
  - Identifying committee in annual reports, **3:104**
  - Independence. Exemptions from independence requirement, above this group
  - Information statement, independence disclosure required in, **3:105**
  - Issuer reporting and disclosure, **6:74, 7:224**
  - Listing standards. NYSE listing standards, below this group
  - Member independence, **3:81**
  - Minimum listing standards, **3:80**
  - Nasdaq standards
    - Charter, **3:118**
    - Entities subject to, **3:119**
    - Financial literacy/financial sophistication, **3:116**
    - Independence, **3:115**
    - Related party/conflict of interest transactions, **3:120**
    - Responsibilities and authority of committee, **3:117**
  - Non-audit services, **7:80**
  - NYSE listing standards
    - Generally, **3:107 to 3:114**
    - Additional audit committee requirements, **3:108**
    - Charter and responsibilities of committee, **3:111**
    - Compliance with Rule 10A-3, **3:107**
    - Entities subject, **3:114**
    - Financial literacy/financial management expertise and simultaneous service on several audit committees, **3:110**
    - Independence, **3:109**
    - Internal audit function, **3:113**
    - Related party/conflict of interest transactions, **3:112**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Audit committee—Cont'd
  - Oversight of auditor
    - Generally, **3:94 to 3:103**
    - Authority to engage advisers, **3:96**
    - Clarifications regarding possible conflicts with other requirements, **3:103**
    - Complaint procedure, **3:95**
    - Compliance dates, **3:100**
    - Funding, **3:97**
    - General exemption for alternative auditor oversight structures of non-U.S. jurisdictions, **3:101**
    - General exemptions from requirement, **3:102**
    - Notification of noncompliance, **3:98**
    - Opportunity to cure defects, **3:99**
    - Selection of auditor, **3:94**
  - Oversight of committee
    - Generally, **7:80 to 7:84**
    - Administration of engagement, **7:80**
    - Application to non-U.S. issuers, **7:83**
    - Limited de minimis exception, **7:82**
    - Pre-approval methods, **7:81**
    - Pre-approval of audit services and permitted non-audit services, **7:80**
    - Registered investment companies, application to, **7:84**
  - Pre-approval policies and procedures, **7:90**
  - Proxy statement, independence disclosure required in, **3:105**
  - SEC authority. Exemptions from independence requirement, above this group
  - SEC implementing rules, **3:80**
- Audit fees, **7:86**
- Auditors
  - Generally, **7:46 to 7:104**
  - See also. Audit committee, above in this heading
  - Accountants. Fees and pre-approval policies, disclosure of, below this group
  - Attestation and report on management's assessment, **6:62**
  - Committee. Audit committee, above in this heading
  - Conflicts of interest
    - Generally, **7:46 to 7:104**
    - Accountants and period covered, **7:103**
    - Audit committee, above in this heading
    - Codification of Rule 102(e) of SEC's Rules of Practice, **7:104**
    - Compensation, prohibited, **7:54, 7:55**
    - Improper influence on conduct of audits, **7:100 to 7:103**
    - Independence of auditor
      - Generally, **7:46 to 7:60**

## **SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

### **Auditors—Cont'd**

#### **Conflicts of interest—Cont'd**

##### **Independence of auditor—Cont'd**

Cooling off after employment relationships, **7:51, 7:52**

Partner rotation, **7:48**

Registered investment companies, **7:49, 7:53**

Transition periods, **7:50**

Issuers and persons covered, improper influence on conduct of audits, **7:101**

Material correcting adjustments, **7:99**

Prohibited conduct, **7:102**

Registered investment companies, **7:55**

Retention of workpapers, below this group

Section 602 of SOX, **7:104**

Disclosure. Fees and pre-approval policies, disclosure of, below this group

Fees and pre-approval policies, disclosure of Generally, **7:85 to 7:92**

Accountant, fees and services of principal accountant, **7:85 to 7:89**

All other fees, **7:89**

Audit fees, **7:86**

Audit-related fees, **7:87**

Location of disclosure, **7:91**

Principal accountant fees and services, generally, **7:85 to 7:89**

Registered investment companies, **7:92**

Tax fees, **7:88**

### **Independence**

Conflicts of interest, above this group

Non-audit services, below this group

### **Issuer reporting and disclosure**

Internal control over financial reporting

Auditor's evaluation of management's certification disclosures, **6:85**

Auditor's evaluation of management's report, **6:68**

Auditor's objective and direct evidence, **6:64**

### **Non-audit services**

Generally, **7:61 to 7:79**

Accountant, **7:63**

Broker-dealer, **7:70**

Client, **7:64**

Engagement period, **7:65**

Human services, **7:69**

Independence. Prohibited services that are expanded by new auditor independence rules. below this subgroup

Investment adviser, **7:70**

Investment banking services, **7:70**

Management functions, **7:68**

Permitted non-audit services, **7:79**

## **SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

### **Auditors—Cont'd**

#### **Non-audit services—Cont'd**

Prohibited services that are expanded by new auditor independence rules

Generally, **7:71 to 7:78**

Actuarial services, **7:75**

Appraisal or valuation services, fairness opinions, or contribution-in-kind reports, **7:74**

Audit client, bookkeeping or other services related to accounting records or financial statements of audit client, **7:72**

Bookkeeping or other services related to accounting records or financial statements of audit client, **7:72**

Expert services unrelated to audit, **7:78**

Financial information systems design and implementation, **7:73**

Internal audit outsourcing services, **7:76**

Legal services, **7:77**

Prohibited services that remain substantially unchanged, **7:67 to 7:70**

Rebuttable presumption, **7:66**

Tax services, **7:79**

Oversight. Audit committee, above in this heading

Prohibited services. Non-audit services, below this group

Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB), below in this heading

Retention of workpapers

Generally, **7:93 to 7:98**

Covered accountants, **7:96**

Covered issuers, **7:95**

Criminal penalties and other federal and state obligations, **7:98**

Documents to be retained, **7:94**

Non-U.S. issuers and accountants, **7:97**

Audit-related fees, **7:87**

### **Audits and auditing**

Auditors, above in this heading

Committee. Audit Committee, above in this heading

Improper influence on conduct of audits, **6:176**

Issuer reporting and disclosure

Internal control over financial reporting Integrated audit, **6:65**

Planning audit, **6:70**

Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB), **7:18**

Time, audit and professional engagement period, **7:65**

Authority to engage advisers, **3:96**

Availability of information and confidential treatment requests, **7:15**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Bankruptcy, **6:179**
- Benefit plan transactions, **6:130**
- Blackout periods. Directors and executive officers, below in this heading
- Board committees, **3:59**
- Board of directors
  - Generally, **3:43 to 3:79**
  - Committee requirements, **3:46, 3:49**
  - Compensation committee, **3:62**
  - Compensation of officers, **3:64**
  - Corporate governance guidelines, **3:61**
  - Definition of independent director, **3:52, 3:56**
  - Disclosure concerning nominations and securityholder communications
    - Generally, **3:65 to 3:71**
  - Background, **3:66**
  - Issuers covered, filings covered, and compliance dates, **3:67**
  - Material changes to securityholder nomination procedures, **3:70**
  - Proxy statement disclosure for director nomination process, **3:68**
  - Proxy statement disclosure for securityholder communications, **3:69**
  - Registered investment companies, **3:71**
  - Related disclosure in quarterly and annual reports, **3:70**
- Educating and training, **3:76**
- Election, **3:72**
- Executive sessions, **3:45, 3:48**
- Independence
  - Criteria, **3:53, 3:57**
  - Majority of board, **3:44, 3:47**
  - Nasdaq standards, **3:55 to 3:58**
  - NYSE standards, **3:51 to 3:54**
  - SEC implementing rules, **3:50**
- Majority of board must be independent directors, **3:44, 3:47**
- Nasdaq standards, **3:47 to 3:49, 3:55 to 3:58, 3:63, 3:64, 3:75, 3:79**
- Nomination of directors, **3:63**
- NYSE standards, **3:44 et seq., 3:51 to 3:54, 3:60 to 3:62, 3:74, 3:78**
- SEC implementing rules, **3:43, 3:50, 3:59, 3:73, 3:77**
- SOX implementing rules, **3:73, 3:77**
- Structure, **3:72**
- Three-year independence look-back period, **3:54, 3:58**
- Bonuses, **6:149**
- Bookkeeping or other services related to accounting records or financial statements of audit client, **7:72**
- Broadcast releases, **6:99**
- Broker-dealer, **6:155, 7:70**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Business combinations disclosure, Regulation G exceptions, **6:104**
- Cashless option exercises, **6:127**
- CEO. Chief executive officer (CEO), below in this heading
- Certification
  - Criminal sanctions, **6:181**
  - Issuer reporting and disclosure, below in this heading
  - Listing standards, **3:191**
  - NYSE standards, **3:191**
- CFO. Chief financial officer (CFO), below in this heading
- Change
  - Audit committee, **3:104 to 3:106**
  - Auditors, **7:67 to 7:70**
  - Issuer reporting and disclosure, **7:219, 7:223, 7:227**
  - Shareholder approval requirements, **3:156, 3:167**
- Charter, **3:111, 3:118**
- Chief executive officer (CEO)
  - Generally, **3:129, 3:191, 6:158, 6:181**
  - NYSE standards, **3:191**
- Chief financial officer (CFO)
  - Generally, **3:129, 6:181**
- Chief legal officer (CLO)
  - Generally, **6:159, 6:163**
  - Attorneys reporting obligation, **6:158**
- Civil action under section 806
  - Generally, **6:166 et seq.**
  - Administrative and civil remedies, **6:170**
  - Criminal sanctions, **6:171**
  - Employee whistleblower protection, **6:166**
  - Non-U.S. issuers, application to, **6:173**
  - Procedure, **6:168**
  - Remedies, **6:169 to 6:171**
  - State employment laws, interplay of SOX section 806 with, **6:172**
- Civil certification by senior executives. Issuer reporting and disclosure, below in this heading
- Civil litigation, **6:177 to 6:179**
- Clarifications regarding possible conflicts with other requirements, **3:103**
- CLO. Chief legal officer (CLO), above in this heading
- Codification of Rule 102(e) of SEC's Rules of Practice, **7:104**
- Committee requirements, **3:46, 3:49**
- Common stock, **3:156, 3:167**
- Communications
  - Audit committee, above in this heading
  - Board of directors, above in this heading

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

Comparison of SEC, NYSE, and Nasdaq codes, **3:144**

Compensation

- Audit committee, **3:82**
- Board of directors, **3:62, 3:64**
- Conflicts of interest, **7:54, 7:55**
- Shareholder approval requirements, **3:157, 3:168**

Complaint procedure, **3:95**

Compliance dates, **3:67, 3:100, 3:106, 3:127, 6:89**

Compliance with Rule 10A-3, **3:107**

Conduct, code of, **3:131**

Confidentiality, **7:15**

Conflicts of interest

- Audit committee, **3:112, 3:120**
- Auditors, above in this heading

Conflicts with other requirements, **3:103**

Conforming amendments for other SEC filings, **6:114**

Conspiracy, **6:185**

Contribution-in-kind, **7:74**

Controlling shareholder representation, **3:89**

Cooling off after employment relationships, **7:51, 7:52**

Corporate governance

- Generally, **3:33 et seq.**
- Audit committee, above in this heading
- Board of directors, above in this heading
- Directors and executive officers, above in this heading
- Ethics, code of, above in this heading
- Shareholder approval requirements, below in this heading

Corrections, **7:99**

Criminal certification of CEO's and CFO's.

- Issuer reporting and disclosure, below in this heading

Criminal sanctions and penalties

- Generally, **6:180 to 6:185**
- Attempts and conspiracies to commit criminal fraud offenses, criminal penalties for mail and wire fraud, criminal penalties for ERISA violations, and increased criminal penalties under Exchange Act, **6:185**
- CEO and CFO certification requirement, **6:181**
- Certification for CEO's and CFO's, **6:50**
- Civil action under SOX section 806, **6:171**
- Conflicts of interest, **7:98**
- Destruction or tampering of records, **6:182**
- Retaliation against informants, **6:183**
- Securities fraud offense, **6:184**

Cross-referencing to financial statements, **7:209**

Cure defects, **3:99**

Current reports, **6:115**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

Defects, **3:99**

Defense attorneys, **6:165**

Definitions

- Blackout period, **6:138**
- Critical accounting estimates, **7:218**
- Disclosure controls, **6:52**
- Independent director, **3:52, 3:56**
- Internal control over financial reporting, **6:57**
- Non-GAAP financial measures, **6:93**
- Off-balance sheet arrangements and aggregate contractual commitments, **7:205**
- Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB), **7:8, 7:21**

De minimis exception, **7:82**

Design, **7:73**

Destruction or tampering of records, **6:182**

Developing procedures, **6:54**

Directors and executive officers

- Generally, **6:119 to 6:150**
- Bars, **6:175**
- Blackout periods. Insider trading during pension fund blackout periods, below this group
- Board of directors, above in this heading
- Company equity securities, reporting of trading in, **6:128 to 6:132**
- Compensation of officers, **3:64**
- Forfeiture of bonuses and profits, **6:149**
- Insider trading during pension fund blackout periods
- Generally, **6:133 to 6:148**
- Content of notice, **6:145**
- Definition of blackout period, **6:138**
- Exceptions to definition of blackout period, **6:141**
- Exemptions, **6:143**
- 15 percent/50,000 people test for foreign private issuers, **6:140**
- 50 percent test, **6:140**
- Individual account plan, **6:139**
- Issuers subject to prohibition, **6:135**
- Notice, **6:144 to 6:147**
- Persons subject to prohibition, **6:136**
- Regulation BTR, **6:134**
- Remedies, **6:148**
- Section 306(a) and Regulation BTR, **6:133**
- Securities subject to prohibition, **6:137**
- Timing of notice, **6:146**
- Transactions exempt from, **6:143**
- Transactions subject to, **6:142**

Loans. Personal loans, prohibition on, below this group

Pension fund. Insider trading during pension fund blackout periods, above this group



**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

Directors and executive officers—Cont'd

- Personal loans, prohibition on
  - Generally, **6:120 to 6:127**
  - Cashless option exercises, **6:127**
  - Grandfather issues, **6:123**
  - Indemnification advances, **6:124**
  - Section 402, **6:120, 6:122**
  - Section 401(k) plans, **6:125**
  - Split-dollar life insurance, **6:126**
- SEC implementing rules, **6:119**
- SEC temporary freeze authority, **6:150**
- Section 403(a) and Exchange Act Section 16(a)
  - Generally, **6:128 to 6:132**
  - Benefit plan transactions, **6:130**
  - Electronic filing, **6:132**
  - Nonreportable transactions, **6:131**
  - Two-day reporting, **6:129**
- Time and date. Insider trading during pension fund blackout periods, above this group
- Trading
  - Insider trading during pension fund blackout periods, above this group
  - Reporting of trading in company equity securities, above this group
- Disciplinary proceedings, **7:23, 7:25**
- Disclosure
  - Audit committee, **3:92, 3:104 to 3:106, 3:122, 3:123**
  - Auditors, above in this heading
  - Board of directors, above in this heading
  - Foreign private issuer exemption and disclosures required, **3:36, 3:37**
  - Issuer reporting and disclosure, below in this heading
  - Shareholder approval requirements, **3:161**
- Earnings, **6:109 to 6:111**
- Earnings releases, **6:110, 6:111**
- Educating and training of directors, **3:76**
- Effective dates, **3:41, 3:42, 3:172**
- Effectiveness of controls, management evaluation of, **6:55**
- Election, **3:72**
- Electronic filing, **6:132**
- Employment
  - Audit committee, employee representation, **3:88**
  - Auditors, conflicts of interest, **7:51, 7:52**
  - Civil action under SOX section 806, **6:172**
  - Whistleblower protection, **6:166, 6:178**
- Enforcement by SEC, **6:174 to 6:176**
- Engagement, **3:96, 7:80**
- Equity, public offerings foreign issuer into U.S., **2:154**
- Equity compensation plans, **3:157, 3:168**
- ERISA, **6:185**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

Estimate. Issuer reporting and disclosure, below in this heading

Ethics, code of
 

- Generally, **3:129 to 3:144**
- Amendments and waivers, **3:135 to 3:137**
- Attorney reports of material violations, **3:130**
- CEO, **3:129**
- CFO, **3:129**
- Comparison of SEC, NYSE, and Nasdaq codes, **3:144**
- Conduct, code of, **3:131**
- Content, **3:133, 3:140, 3:143**
- Foreign issuers, amendments and waivers, **3:137**
- Making code publicly available, **3:134**
- Nasdaq, **3:141 to 3:144**
- NYSE, **3:138 to 3:140, 3:144**
- SEC, **3:132, 3:144**
- U.S. issuers, amendments and waivers, **3:136**
- Waivers, **3:139, 3:142**

Evaluation. Issuer reporting and disclosure, below in this heading

Evidence, **6:64, 6:80**

Exceptions, exemptions, and exclusions
 

- Audit committee, above in this heading
- Auditors, **7:82**
- Directors and executive officers, **6:141, 6:143**
- Foreign private issuer exemption and disclosures required, **3:36, 3:37**
- Issuer reporting and disclosure, **6:102 to 6:104**
- Nasdaq standards, **3:159, 3:170, 3:173**
- Shareholder approval requirements, **3:159, 3:170**

Exchange Act, generally, **6:185**

Exchange Act Section 16(a). Directors and executive officers, below in this heading

Executive officers. Directors and executive officers, above in this heading

Executive sessions, **3:45, 3:48**

Experience, **3:125**

Experts and expertise
 

- Audit committee, above in this heading
- Auditors, **7:78**

Fairness opinions, **7:74**

False certification, liability for, **6:45**

False or misleading measures prohibited, **6:96**

Fees
 

- Generally, **3:82**
- Auditors, above in this heading

15 percent/50,000 people test for foreign private issuers, **6:140**

50 percent test, **6:140**

Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), **7:7, 7:33**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

Financial expert. Audit committee, above in this heading

Financial information systems design and implementation, **7:73**

Financial literacy, **3:110, 3:116**

Financial sophistication, **3:116**

Firms required to register, **7:11, 7:12**

Foreign authorities, PCAOB's assistance from foreign authorities in oversight of U.S. registered public accounting firms, **7:32**

Foreign government representation, **3:90**

Foreign issuers

- Annual reports, **6:109 to 6:111**
- Applicability of, **3:35**
- Audit committee oversight, **7:83**
- Civil action under SOX section 806, **6:173**
- Critical accounting policies and estimates, **7:228**
- Ethics, code of, **3:137**
- Management's discussion and analysis (MD&A), **7:190**
- Off-balance sheet arrangements and aggregate contractual commitments, **7:213**

Private issuers

- Accommodations, **3:87**
- Disclosure, **3:36, 3:37**
- Earnings releases, **6:110**
- Exemptions, **3:36, 3:37, 3:87**
- Insider trading during pension fund blackout periods, 15 percent/50,000 people test, **6:140**
- Limitations for SEC filings, **6:108**
- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:154**
- Real-time disclosures and SEC review of periodic disclosure, **6:116**
- Regulation G exceptions, **6:103**
- Retention of workpapers, **7:97**
- Waiver or modification of standards, **3:186 to 3:188**

Foreign jurisdictions, **3:101**

Foreign public accounting firms, **7:12**

Foreign registration, **7:29 to 7:31**

Forfeiture of bonuses and profits, **6:149**

Form 20-F, Item 5, **7:190**

Form 8-K, **6:109, 6:117**

Form 10-K, **6:113**

Form 10-Q, **6:113**

Forward-looking information, **7:212**

Forward-looking quantitative reconciliation, **6:98**

Framework for management evaluation, **6:59**

Fraud, **6:177, 6:184, 6:185**

Freeze payments, power to, **6:174**

Funding, **3:97, 7:33**

Grandfather issues, **6:123**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

Human services, **7:69**

Identification, **3:104, 6:82**

Implementing rules, **3:73, 3:77, 3:145, 3:176, 3:183, 3:186, 3:189**

Improper influence on conduct of audits, **6:176, 7:100 to 7:103**

Indemnification advances, **6:124**

Independence

- Audit committee, above in this heading
- Auditors, above in this heading
- Board of directors, above in this heading
- Issuer reporting and disclosure, **6:86**

Individual account plan, **6:139**

Informants, **6:183**

Information statement, independence disclosure required in, **3:105**

In the representation of issuer, **6:153**

Initial adoption of accounting policies, **7:226**

Insider trading during pension fund blackout periods. Directors and executive officers, above in this heading

Inspections, **7:22, 7:30**

Insurance, **6:126**

Integrated audit

- Issuer reporting and disclosure
- Internal control over financial reporting, **6:65**

Interim standards, **7:20**

Internal audit function, **3:113**

Internal audit outsourcing services, **7:76**

Internal control over financial reporting. Issuer reporting and disclosure, below in this heading

Investigating and defending attorneys, obligations of, **6:165**

Investigations, **6:165, 7:23, 7:24, 7:28, 7:31**

Investment adviser, **7:70**

Investment banking services, **7:70**

Investment companies

- Attorneys, **6:155**
- Audit committee oversight, **7:84**
- Board of directors, **3:71**
- Civil certification by senior executives, **6:46**
- Communication with audit committees, **7:60**
- Conflicts of interest, **7:49, 7:53, 7:55**
- Fees and pre-approval policies, disclosure of, **7:92**

Issuer reporting and disclosure

- Generally, **6:37 to 6:118**
- Appeal and review. Real-time disclosures and SEC review of periodic disclosure, below this group
- Civil certification by senior executives
- Generally, **6:37 to 6:46**
- Contents, **6:42**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Issuer reporting and disclosure—Cont'd
  - Civil certification by senior executives—Cont'd
    - False certification, liability for, **6:45**
    - Form of certification, **6:43, 6:44**
    - Issuers covered, **6:39**
    - Location of certification, **6:44**
    - Registered investment company reports, **6:46**
    - Reports covered, **6:40**
    - Rule 13a-14 under Exchange Act, **6:38**
    - Rule 15d-14 under Exchange Act, **6:38**
    - Section 302 certification, generally, **6:38 et seq.**
    - Signature, **6:41**
  - Criminal certification of CEO's and CFO's
    - Generally, **6:47 to 6:50**
    - Amendments, **6:49**
    - Criminal penalties, **6:50**
    - Section 906 certification, **6:47**
    - Submission method, **6:48**
  - Critical accounting policies and estimates
    - Generally, **7:214 to 7:231**
    - Assumptions, **7:219**
    - Audit committee, discussion with, **7:224**
    - Cautionary Advice of December 2001 regarding disclosure about critical accounting policies, **7:214**
    - Changes, **7:219, 7:223, 7:227**
    - Definition of critical accounting estimates, **7:218**
    - Effect on financial presentation, **7:220**
    - Fortune 500 Summary (2003) and Guidance (November 2004), **7:229**
    - Initial adoption of policies, **7:226**
    - MD&A Release 2003, critical accounting estimates, **7:230**
    - MD&A Release 2003, relationship to Proposal (May 2002) for critical accounting estimates, **7:231**
    - Methodology, **7:219**
    - Non-U.S. issuers, application to, **7:228**
    - Past changes in estimate, quantitative and qualitative disclosures of, **7:223**
    - Proposed disclosure requirements, **7:215, 7:226**
    - Qualitative disclosures, **7:223**
    - Quantitative disclosures, **7:221 to 7:223**
    - SEC comments, **7:229**
    - Segments, disclosure for, **7:225**
    - Sensitivity, quantitative disclosures of, **7:222**
  - Disclosure controls
    - Generally, **6:51 to 6:59**
    - Definition, **6:52**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Issuer reporting and disclosure—Cont'd
  - Disclosure controls—Cont'd
    - Developing procedures, **6:54**
    - Effectiveness of controls, management evaluation of, **6:55**
    - Evaluation, **6:53**
    - Framework for management evaluation, **6:59**
    - Internal control over financial reporting, **6:87**
  - Evaluation, see lines throughout this group
  - Internal control over financial reporting
    - Generally, **6:56 to 6:90**
    - Actions required by management, **6:67**
    - Audit, planning, **6:70**
    - Audit committee, role of, **6:74**
    - Auditor attestation and report on management's assessment, **6:62**
    - Auditor's evaluation of management's certification disclosures, **6:85**
    - Auditor's evaluation of management's report, **6:68**
    - Auditor's objective and direct evidence, **6:64**
    - Compliance dates, **6:89**
    - Definition, **6:57**
    - Disclosure and remediation, **6:83**
    - Disclosure controls compared, **6:87**
    - Evaluating management's assessment process, **6:71**
    - Evidence that must be evaluated, **6:80**
    - Identifying and evaluating deficiencies, **6:82**
    - Independence, **6:86**
    - Integrated audit, **6:65**
    - Issuers affected, **6:88**
    - Management evaluation, procedures for, **6:60**
    - Management's annual internal control report, **6:58**
    - Opinion, forming, **6:79 to 6:83**
    - Planning audit, **6:70**
    - Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) Auditing Standard No. 5, **6:63**
    - Quarterly evaluations, **6:61**
    - Recommendations, **6:90**
    - Reporting on results, **6:84**
    - Review process, generally, **6:69 to 6:84**
    - Rotation, **6:76**
    - Small business concerns, **6:66**
    - Testing and evaluating operating effectiveness of controls, **6:75 to 6:78**
    - Third-party service providers, outsourcing to, **6:78**
    - Third persons, using work of others, **6:77**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Issuer reporting and disclosure—Cont'd
  - Internal control over financial reporting
    - Cont'd
    - Understanding overall design and operation, **6:72 to 6:74**
    - Unqualified opinion, issuing, **6:81**
    - Walk-throughs, **6:73**
  - Management certifications
    - Generally, **6:37 to 6:50**
    - Civil certification by senior executives, above this group
    - Criminal certification for CEO's and CFO's, above this group
  - Management evaluation, see lines throughout this group
  - Management's discussion and analysis (MD&A)
    - Generally, **7:190 to 7:270**
    - Aggregate contractual commitments. Off-balance sheet arrangements and aggregate contractual commitments, below this group
    - Critical accounting policies and estimates, above this group
    - Estimates. Critical accounting policies and estimates, above this group
    - Form 20-F, Item 5, **7:190**
    - Off-balance sheet arrangements and aggregate contractual commitments, below this group
    - Operating and financial review and prospects (MD&A for foreign private issuers), **7:190**
  - MD&A. Management's discussion and analysis (MD&A), above this group
  - Non-GAAP financial measures
    - Generally, **6:91 to 6:111**
    - Annual reports and earnings releases of non-U.S. issuers, **6:111**
    - Broadcast releases, **6:99**
    - Business combinations disclosure, Regulation G exceptions, **6:104**
    - Definition, **6:93, 6:95**
    - Examples, **6:94**
    - False or misleading measures prohibited, **6:96**
    - Foreign private issuers, Regulation G exceptions, **6:103**
    - Foreign private issuers need not furnish earnings releases, **6:110**
    - Form 8-K furnishing of earnings releases by U.S. issuers, **6:109**
    - Forward-looking quantitative reconciliation, **6:98**
    - Limitations for SEC filings of foreign private issuers, **6:108**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Issuer reporting and disclosure—Cont'd
  - Non-GAAP financial measures—Cont'd
    - Oral releases, **6:99**
    - Prohibited disclosures, **6:107**
    - Public disclosures, **3:161, 6:91**
    - Reconciliation, **6:97, 6:98**
    - Regulation G
      - Generally et seq., **6:92**
      - Exceptions, **6:102 to 6:104**
      - Liability, **6:101**
      - Regulation FD compared, **6:100**
    - Releases, **6:99**
    - Required disclosures, **6:106**
    - SEC filings, using in, **6:105 et seq.**
    - Telephonic releases, **6:99**
    - Webcast releases, **6:99**
  - Off-balance sheet arrangements and aggregate contractual commitments
    - Generally, **7:202 to 7:213**
    - Definition, **7:205**
    - Disclosure
      - Aggregate approach, **7:208**
      - Aggregate contractual commitment, **7:210**
      - Contents, generally, **7:207 to 7:211**
      - Cross-referencing to financial statements, **7:209**
      - Table of aggregate contractual obligations, **7:211**
      - Threshold of disclosure, **7:206**
    - Implementing rules, **7:203**
    - MD&A Release (2002), **7:202**
    - Non-U.S. issuers, application of MD&A to, **7:213**
    - Safe harbor for forward-looking information, **7:212**
    - Threshold of disclosure, **7:206**
  - Periodic disclosure. Real-time disclosures and SEC review of periodic disclosure, below this group
  - Real-time disclosures and SEC review of periodic disclosure
    - Generally, **6:112 to 6:118**
    - Accelerated filing deadlines for Forms 10-K and 10-Q, **6:113 to 6:116**
    - Conforming amendments for other SEC filings, **6:114**
    - Expanded disclosure requirements and accelerated filing deadline for Form 8-K, **6:117**
    - Mandatory three-year review of periodic reports, **6:118**
    - Non-U.S. issuers, application to, **6:116**
    - Section 409, **6:112**
    - SOX requirements, **6:112**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Issuer reporting and disclosure—Cont'd
  - Real-time disclosures and SEC review of periodic disclosure—Cont'd
    - Website access to periodic and current reports, disclosure concerning, **6:115**
  - Regulation G. Non-GAAP financial measures, above this group
  - SEC review. Real-time disclosures and SEC review of periodic disclosure, above this group
  - Section 302 certification. Civil certification by senior executives, above this group
- Jurisdictions, **3:101**
- Legal services, **7:77**
- Life insurance, **6:126**
- Limitation of actions for securities fraud lengthened, **6:177**
- Limitations for SEC filings of foreign private issuers, **6:108**
- Limited de minimis exception, **7:82**
- Listing standards
  - Audit committee, above in this heading
  - Audit committee, minimum listing standards, **3:80**
  - CEO certification, NYSE standards, **3:191**
  - Delisting, **3:198**
  - Nasdaq standards, below in this heading
  - Notification, **3:192, 3:196**
  - NYSE standards, below in this heading
  - Public reprimand and delisting, **3:194**
- Loans. Directors and executive officers, above in this heading
- Location, **3:123, 6:44, 7:91**
- Look-back period, **3:54, 3:58**
- Mail and wire fraud, **6:185**
- Majority of board must be independent directors, **3:44, 3:47**
- Management
  - Annual internal control report, **6:58**
  - Assessment, **6:62**
  - Certifications. Issuer reporting and disclosure, above in this heading
  - Discussion and analysis. Issuer reporting and disclosure, above in this heading
  - Evaluation, **6:55, 6:59, 6:60**
  - Expertise, **3:110**
  - Functions, **7:68**
  - Issuer reporting and disclosure, **6:68, 6:71, 6:85**
- Management evaluation. Issuer reporting and disclosure, above in this heading
- Mandatory three-year review of periodic reports, **6:118**
- Material amendments, **3:169**
- Material correcting adjustments, **7:99**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Material revisions, **3:158**
- Material violations, **3:130**
- MD&A. Issuer reporting and disclosure, above in this heading
- Meetings. Shareholder meetings, below in this heading
- Member independence, **3:81**
- Mergers and acquisitions, **3:160**
- Minimum listing standards, **3:80**
- Misleading, **6:96**
- Nasdaq standards
  - Generally, **3:34, 3:195**
  - Audit committee, above in this heading
  - Board of directors, **3:47 to 3:49, 3:55 to 3:58, 3:63, 3:64, 3:75, 3:79**
  - Corporate governance standards, **3:40**
  - Delisting, **3:198**
  - Effective dates, **3:42**
  - Ethics, code of, **3:141 to 3:144**
  - Foreign issuers, waiver or modification of standards, **3:188**
  - Foreign private issuer exemption and disclosures, **3:37**
  - Notification, **3:196**
  - Shareholder approval requirements, below in this heading
  - Shareholder direct registration system, **3:185**
  - Shareholder meetings, **3:150 to 3:153**
  - Shareholder rights, **3:180 to 3:182**
- Newly public companies, **3:85**
- Nominating committee, **3:60 to 3:62**
- Nomination of directors, **3:63**
- Nominations. Board of directors, above in this heading
- Non-audit services
  - Audit committee oversight, **7:80**
  - Auditors, above in this heading
- Noncompliance, **3:98**
- Nondischargeable debts in bankruptcy, **6:179**
- Non-GAAP financial measures. Issuer reporting and disclosure, above in this heading
- Nonreportable transactions, **6:131**
- Non-U.S. issuers. Foreign issuers, above in this heading
- Notice
  - Auditor oversight, **3:98**
  - Insider trading during pension fund blackout periods, **6:144 to 6:147**
  - Listing standards, **3:192, 3:196**
  - NYSE standards, **3:192**
  - Shareholder approval requirements, **3:161, 3:171**
- NYSE standards
  - Generally, **3:34, 3:36**
  - Audit committee, above in this heading



**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

## NYSE standards—Cont'd

- Board of directors, **3:44 et seq., 3:51 to 3:54, 3:74, 3:78**
- Corporate governance standards, **3:39**
- Effective dates, **3:41**
- Ethics, code of, **3:138 to 3:140, 3:144**
- Foreign issuers, waiver or modification of standards, **3:187**
- Nominating/corporate governance committee, **3:60 to 3:62**
- Penalties. Remedies and penalties, below in this heading
- Remedies and penalties
  - Generally, **3:190 to 3:194**
  - CEO certification, **3:191**
  - Implementing rules, **3:189**
  - Notification, **3:192**
  - Public reprimand and delisting, **3:194**
  - Written affirmations, **3:193**
- Shareholder direct registration system, **3:184**
- Shareholder meetings, **3:146 to 3:149**
- Shareholder rights, **3:177 to 3:179**
- Off-balance sheet arrangements and aggregate contractual commitments. Issuer reporting and disclosure, above in this heading
- Officers. Directors and executive officers, above in this heading
- Opinions, **6:79 to 6:83, 7:74**
- Opportunity to cure defects, **3:99**
- Options, **6:127**
- Oral releases, **6:99**
- Other issuers and securities, application to, **3:38**
- Outsourcing services, **7:76**
- Overlapping board relationships, **3:86**
- Oversight
  - Audit committee, above in this heading
  - Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB), below in this heading
- Participation in rights offerings, Nasdaq standards, **3:181**
- Participation in rights offerings, NYSE standards, **3:178**
- Partner, compensation of audit partner, **7:54**
- Partner rotation, **7:48**
- Past changes in estimate, quantitative and qualitative disclosures of, **7:223**
- Payments, **6:174**
- Penalties. Criminal sanctions and penalties, above in this heading
- Penalties. NYSE standards, above in this heading
- Pension fund blackout periods. Directors and executive officers, above in this heading
- Periodic disclosure. Issuer reporting and disclosure, above in this heading
- Periodic reports, **7:14**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Permitted non-audit services, **7:79, 7:80**
- Personal loans, prohibition on. Directors and executive officers, above in this heading
- Pre-approval methods, **7:81**
- Pre-approval of audit services and permitted non-audit services, **7:80**
- Pre-existing plans, **3:162**
- Presentation, **7:220**
- Presumption, **7:66**
- Private issuers. Foreign issuers, above
- Professional conduct standards of SEC, **6:151**
- Professional engagement period, **7:65**
- Profits, **6:149**
- Prohibited disclosures, **6:107**
- Prohibited services
  - Auditors, above in this heading
  - Non-audit services, **7:67 to 7:70**
- Proposed disclosure requirements, **7:215, 7:226**
- Proxy solicitation, **3:149, 3:153**
- Proxy statement, **3:68, 3:105**
- Public availability, **3:134, 7:15**
- Public companies, newly, **3:85**
- Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB)
  - Generally, **7:7 to 7:33**
  - Assistance from foreign authorities in oversight of U.S. registered public accounting firms, **7:32**
  - Auditing standards, **6:63, 7:18**
  - Definition, **7:8**
  - Disciplinary proceedings, **7:23, 7:25**
  - FASB, funding of, **7:33**
  - Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), relationship between, **7:7**
  - Foreign authorities' assistance in oversight of U.S. registered public accounting firms, **7:32**
  - Foreign registered public accounting firms, **7:29 to 7:31**
  - Funding, **7:33**
  - Inspections, **7:22, 7:30**
  - Interim standards, **7:20**
  - Investigations, **7:23, 7:24, 7:28, 7:31**
  - Periodic reports, **7:14**
  - Quality control standards, **7:19**
  - Registration
    - Generally, **7:9**
    - Disapproval of, **7:27**
    - Foreign registered public accounting firms, **7:29 to 7:31**
    - Inspections, foreign registered public accounting firms, **7:30**
    - Withdrawal, **7:16**
  - Registration system
    - Generally, **7:10 et seq.**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB)—Cont'd
  - Registration system—Cont'd
    - Action on applications for registration, **7:13**
    - Firms required to register, **7:11**
    - Non-U.S. public accounting firms, **7:12**
    - Public availability of information and confidential treatment requests, **7:15**
  - Sanctions, **7:23, 7:26, 7:31**
  - SEC rules on review of sanctions, **7:27**
  - Standard-setting, generally, **7:17 et seq.**
  - Terminology, **7:21**
  - Withdrawal from registration, **7:16**
- Public disclosure, **3:161, 6:91**
- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:14, 2:154, 2:164, 2:189**
- Public reprimand and delisting, **3:194**
- Qualifications, **6:81**
- Qualified legal compliance committee regime, **6:161 to 6:164**
- Qualitative disclosures, **7:223**
- Quality control standards, **7:19**
- Quantitative disclosures, **7:221 to 7:223**
- Quantitative reconciliation, **6:98**
- Quarterly evaluations, **6:61**
- Quarterly reports, **3:70**
- Quorum, **3:148, 3:152**
- Real-time disclosures and SEC review of periodic disclosure. Issuer reporting and disclosure, above in this heading
- Rebuttable presumption, **7:66**
- Recommendations, **6:90**
- Reconciliation, **6:97, 6:98**
- Registered investment companies
  - Attorneys, **6:155**
  - Audit committee, **7:60, 7:84**
  - Auditors, **7:49, 7:53, 7:55, 7:92**
  - Board of directors, **3:71**
  - Compensation, prohibited, **7:55**
  - Issuer reporting and disclosure, **6:46**
  - Shareholder direct registration system, **3:183 to 3:185**
- Registration
  - Corporate governance, **3:71**
  - Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB), above in this heading
  - Withdrawal from, **7:16**
- Regulation BTR, **6:133, 6:134**
- Regulation FD, **6:100**
- Regulation G. Issuer reporting and disclosure, above in this heading
- Related party/conflict of interest transactions, **3:112, 3:120**
- Releases, **6:99, 6:109 to 6:111**
- Remediation, **6:83**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Remedies, generally, **6:174 to 6:186**
- Reports and reporting
  - Generally, **6:36**
  - Attorneys, above in this heading
  - Audit committee, **3:104, 3:128**
  - Board of directors, **3:70**
  - Contribution-in-kind reports, **7:74**
  - Corporate governance, **3:70, 3:104**
  - Ethics, code of, **3:130**
  - Foreign issuers' annual reports, **6:109 to 6:111**
  - Issuer reporting and disclosure, above in this heading
  - Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB), **7:14**
- Representation, **3:88 to 3:90**
- Reprimand, **3:194**
- Requests for independent exemptions, **3:93**
- Response, **6:159**
- Retaliation against informants, **6:183**
- Retention of workpapers. Auditors, above in this heading
- Revisions, **3:158**
- Rule 102(e), **7:104**
- Rule 10A-3, **3:107**
- Rule 13a-14 under Exchange Act, **6:38**
- Rule 15d-14 under Exchange Act, **6:38**
- Safe harbor, **3:126, 7:212**
- Sanctions
  - Criminal sanctions, above in this heading
  - Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB), **7:23, 7:26, 7:27, 7:31**
- SEC implementing rules, **3:73, 3:77, 3:145, 3:176, 3:183, 3:186, 3:189**
- SEC rules on review of sanctions, **7:27**
- Section 402, **6:120, 6:122**
- Section 409, **6:112**
- Section 602, **7:104**
- Section 806. Civil action under SOX section 806, above in this heading
- Section 403(a) and Exchange Act Section 16(a). Directors and executive officers, above in this heading
- Section 306(a) and Regulation BTR, **6:133**
- Section 302 certification. Issuer reporting and disclosure, above in this heading
- Section 906 certification, **6:47**
- Section 401(k) plans, **6:125**
- Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)
  - Corporate governance, **3:73, 3:77, 3:145, 3:176, 3:183, 3:186**
  - Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB), **7:27**
- Securities fraud offense, **6:184**
- Securityholder communications. Board of directors, above in this heading

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Segments, disclosure for, **7:225**
- Selection of auditor, **3:94**
- Sensitivity, quantitative disclosures of, **7:222**
- Shareholder approval requirements
  - Generally, **3:154 to 3:175**
  - Effect of NYSE and Nasdaq rules, **3:175**
  - Nasdaq standards
    - Generally, **3:166 to 3:174**
    - Common stock issuance and change of control transactions, **3:167**
    - Effective date, **3:172**
    - Effect of NYSE and Nasdaq rules, **3:175**
    - Equity compensation plans, **3:168**
    - Exemptions, **3:170**
    - Material amendments, **3:169**
    - Notification to, **3:171**
  - NYSE standards
    - Generally, **3:155 to 3:165**
    - Common stock issuance and change of control, **3:156**
    - Effect of NYSE and Nasdaq rules, **3:175**
    - Equity compensation plans, **3:157**
    - Exemptions, **3:159**
    - Material revisions, **3:158**
    - Mergers and acquisitions, **3:160**
    - Notification to NYSE and public disclosure, **3:161**
    - Pre-existing plans, **3:162**
    - Transition rules, **3:163**
  - SEC implementing rules, **3:154**
- Shareholder direct registration system, **3:183 to 3:185**
- Shareholder meetings
  - Generally, **3:145 to 3:153**
  - Annual meetings, Nasdaq standards, **3:151**
  - Annual meetings, NYSE standards, **3:147**
  - Implementing rules, **3:145**
  - Nasdaq standards, **3:150 to 3:153**
  - NYSE standards, **3:146 to 3:149**
  - Proxy solicitation, Nasdaq standards, **3:153**
  - Proxy solicitation, NYSE standards, **3:149**
  - Quorum, Nasdaq standards, **3:152**
  - Quorum, NYSE standards, **3:148**
  - SEC implementing rules, **3:145**
- Shareholder rights
  - Generally, **3:176 to 3:182**
  - Implementing rules, **3:176**
  - Nasdaq standards, **3:180 to 3:182**
  - NYSE standards, **3:177 to 3:179**
  - Participation in rights offerings, Nasdaq standards, **3:181**
  - Participation in rights offerings, NYSE standards, **3:178**
  - SEC implementing rules, **3:176**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Shareholder rights—Cont'd
  - Voting rights, Nasdaq standards, **3:182**
  - Voting rights, NYSE standards, **3:179**
- Shareholders, **3:89**
- Signature, **6:41**
- Simultaneous service, **3:110**
- Small business concerns
  - Issuer reporting and disclosure
    - Internal control over financial reporting
      - Small business concerns, **6:66**
- Split-dollar life insurance, **6:126**
- State laws, **6:172, 7:98**
- Submission method, **6:48**
- Table of aggregate contractual obligations, **7:211**
- Tampering of records, **6:182**
- Tax fees, **7:88**
- Tax services, **7:79**
- Telephonic releases, **6:99**
- Temporary freeze authority, **6:150**
- Tests and testing, **6:75 to 6:78, 6:140**
- Third-party service providers, outsourcing to
  - Issuer reporting and disclosure
    - Internal control over financial reporting, **6:78**
- Third persons, using work of others
  - Issuer reporting and disclosure
    - Internal control over financial reporting, **6:77**
- Three-year independence look-back period, **3:54, 3:58**
- Threshold of disclosure, **7:206**
- Time and date
  - Audit committee, **3:100, 3:106, 3:123, 3:127**
- Auditors
  - Conflicts of interest, **7:50, 7:103**
  - Non-audit services, **7:65**
- Board of directors, **3:67**
- Directors and executive officers, above in this heading
- Insider trading during pension fund blackout periods, **6:146**
- Issuer reporting and disclosure, **6:89, 6:113, 6:117, 6:118**
- Limitation of actions for securities fraud
  - lengthened, **6:177**
- Nasdaq standards, effective dates of, **3:42**
- NYSE standards, effective dates of, **3:41**
- Shareholder approval requirements, **3:172**
- Three-year independence look-back period, **3:54, 3:58**
- Trading. Directors and executive officers, above in this heading
- Training, **3:76**
- Transition period, **7:50**
- Transition rules, **3:163**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Triggering reporting obligation, **6:156**
- Two-day reporting, **6:129**
- Two-tier board systems, **3:91**
- Underwriters, **6:155**
- Up-the-ladder, **6:160**
- Value and valuation, **7:74**
- Voting rights, Nasdaq standards, **3:182**
- Voting rights, NYSE standards, **3:179**
- Waivers, **3:135 to 3:137, 3:139, 3:142, 3:186 to 3:188**
- Walk-throughs
  - Issuer reporting and disclosure
    - Internal control over financial reporting, **6:73**
- Webcast releases, **6:99**
- Website access to periodic and current reports, disclosure concerning, **6:115**
- Whistleblower, **6:166, 6:178**
- Wire fraud, **6:185**
- Withdrawal, **7:16**
- Written affirmations, **3:193**
- Written communications, **7:59**

**SCHEDULE B**

- See **Sovereigns** (this index)

**SCHEDULE 14D-9**

- Tender offers, target disclosure requirements in third-party tender offers subject to Regulation 14D, **11:87**

**SCHEDULE 13D CONTENTS**

- Tender and exchange offers, **11:12**

**SCHEDULE 14D-9F**

- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:60**

**SCHEDULE 13E-4F, 14D-1F AND 14D-9F**

- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:59 to 12:62**

**SCHEDULE 13E-4F AND 14D-1F**

- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:59**

**SCHEDULE 13G CONTENTS**

- Tender and exchange offers, **11:13**

**SCHEDULE TO**

- Bids and bidding—tender offers, disclosure requirements in third-party tender offers subject to Regulation 14D, **11:83**

**SEC**

- See **Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)** (this index)

**SECONDARY MARKETS TRADING SYSTEMS**

- Private placement, **5:70**

**SECONDARY TRADING**

- Blue Sky Law, **15:53**

**SECTION 13(h)**

- Large trader reporting, factors considered by SEC, **11:74**

**SECTION 16 REPORTING**

- Beneficial ownership. **Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

**SECTION 16 REPORTING, BENEFICIAL OWNERSHIP**

- Beneficial ownership. **Securities Exchange Act (1934)** (this index)

**SECURITIES**

- Generally, **1:13 et seq.**
- See also other entries throughout this index
- Bank certificates of deposit, generally, **1:18**
- Blue Sky Laws** (this index)
- Certificates of deposit, bank, generally, **1:18**
- Commodity Futures Modernization Act (CFMA), **1:25**
- Contracts, investment contracts, generally, **1:19**
- Debt, generally, **1:15 to 1:18**
- Definition, **1:13**
- Deposit, bank certificates of deposit, generally, **1:18**
- Derivatives, background, **1:22**
- Division of jurisdiction between SEC and Commodity Futures Trading Commission (CFTC), **1:23**
- Exemptions from federal securities laws, **1:30**
- Federal securities law, hierarchy of, **1:12**
- Federal statutes, generally, **1:2**
- Federal tax treatment, **1:31**
- Interest rate protection transactions, generally, **1:21**
- Investment contracts, generally, **1:19**
- Joint jurisdiction and notice registration, **1:28**
- Joint venture interests, generally, **1:20**
- Jurisdiction, **1:23, 1:28**
- Limited liability company interests, generally, **1:20**
- Listing standards, **1:29**
- Loan participations and syndications, generally, **1:17**
- Narrow-based security indexes, **1:27**
- Notes, generally, **1:16**
- Notice registration, **1:28**
- Offering reform. **Securities Offering Reform** (this index)
- Partnership interests, generally, **1:20**

**SECURITIES—Cont'd**

- Registration, **1:28**
- Repackaged products, generally, **1:21**
- Security futures products, **1:26**
- Statutes, generally, **1:2**
- Stock, generally, **1:14**
- Swaps, **1:21, 1:24, 1:32**
- Taxation, **1:31**
- U.S. regulation and related instruments, generally, **1:1**

**SECURITIES ACT (1933)**

- Generally, **1:3**
- See also **Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD); Regulation S; Securities Offering Reform** (this index)
- American Depositary Receipts, **8:18 to 8:21**

**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE****COMMISSION (SEC)**

- Generally, **1:11**
- Accounting and financial matters
  - Auditing, requirements, **7:10**
  - Derivatives, disclosure requirements, **7:272, 7:273**
- MD&A
  - Generally, **7:190 to 7:270**
  - See also **Accounting and Financial Matters** (this index)
- Broker-Dealers** (this index)
- Investment advisers, **14:34 to 14:37, 14:58, 14:59**
- Investment Advisers** (this index)
- Jurisdiction, division between SEC and Commodity Futures Trading Commission (CFTC), **1:23**
- Large trader filing. **Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)
- Off-balance sheet arrangements and aggregate contractual commitments, implementing rules, **7:203**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)
- Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)
- Whistleblower rules under Dodd-Frank Act, **6:166.10**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (1934)**

- Generally, **1:4**
- See also **Broker-Dealers** (this index)
- Annual reports, **6:23**
- Beneficial ownership reporting
  - Section 13 reporting, **11:2 to 11:13**
  - Section 16 reporting, **11:14 to 11:33**
- Conflict minerals disclosure guidelines, **6:23.10, 6:23.20**
- Current reports, **6:25**
- Development banks, **6:27**
- Disclosure concerning mine safety, **6:23.60**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (1934)****—Cont'd**

- Dodd-Frank Act
  - Conflict minerals disclosure guidelines, **6:23.10, 6:23.20**
  - False or misleading statement liability, **6:23.20**
  - Mine safety, SEC rules for disclosure, **6:23.60**
- EDGAR, Form SD reporting, **6:23.50**
- Equity security and class, Section 16 reporting, **11:18**
- Exchange listed securities, **6:2, 6:30, 6:31**
- Exemptions. See **Over-the-counter and other widely held securities**, below in this heading
- Exemptive authority, **6:19**
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, **6:186**
- Foreign government issuers, **6:27**
- Foreign integrated disclosure system, Form 20-F, **6:28**
- Foreign private issuer deregistration, Form 12h-6, **6:29.20**
- Form 20-F, foreign integrated disclosure system, **6:28**
- Form 12h-6
  - Foreign private issuer deregistration, **6:29.20**
  - Terminating successor issuer status after M&A transaction, **6:29.30**
- Form 8-KI filing requirement, **6:23.70**
- Form SD reporting, **6:23.50**
- Holders of record
  - Calculation, **6:2.50**
  - Triggers for registration, **6:2.50**
- Interim reports, **6:24**
- Listings
  - Exchange listed securities, **6:2, 6:30, 6:31**
  - Nasdaq listed securities, **6:32**
  - Registration, **3:5 to 3:7**
- Mergers and acquisitions
  - Form 12h-6, terminating successor issuer status after M&A transaction, **6:29.30**
  - Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:28**
- Mine safety
  - Form 8-K filing, **6:23.70**
  - SEC rules for disclosure, **6:23.60**
- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:34 et seq.**
- Nasdaq, **6:3, 6:32**
- New York Stock Exchange, **6:31**
- Offering reform. **Securities Offering Reform** (this index)
- Over 5 percent shareholders, reports of, **6:26**
- Over-the-counter and other widely held securities
  - Exemptions
    - Rule 12g3-2(b). See **Rule 12g3-2(b) information supplying exemption**, below in this heading



**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (1934)**

**—Cont'd**

Over-the-counter and other widely held securities

**—Cont'd**

Exemptions—Cont'd

Section 12(g) registration. See Section 12(g) registration, below in this heading

Registered ADRs exemption, **6:10**

Registration, generally, **6:4 et seq.**

Rule 12g3-2(a), too few U.S. shareholders, **6:7**

Rule 12g3-2(b) information supplying exemption

Generally, **6:8, 6:11 et seq.**

Application and information submissions, **6:14**

Consequences of furnishing information, **6:15**

Information needed, **6:13**

Requirements, **6:12**

Voluntarily claiming exemption, **6:16**

Section 12(g) registration

Generally, **3:7, 6:5 et seq.**

Exemptions, generally, **6:6 et seq.**

Information supplying exemption, **6:8**

Registered ADRs exemption, **6:10**

Rule 12g3-2(a), too few U.S. shareholders, **6:7**

Rule 12g3-2(b) information supplying exemption, generally, **6:8, 6:11 et seq.**

Successor issuers under Section 12(b) or 12(g), **6:17**

Too few U.S. shareholders exemption, **6:7**

Voluntarily claiming exemption, **6:16**

Proxy materials and reports to shareholders, **6:35**

Publicly offered securities, suspension of Section 15(d) reporting, **6:34**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:189**

Registered ADRs exemption, **6:10**

Registration

Generally, **6:1 et seq.**

See also Reporting, below in this heading

Calculating holders of record, **6:2.50**

Deregistration, **6:29.10, 6:29.20**

Exchange listed securities, **6:2**

Exemptive authority, **6:19**

Foreign private issuer deregistration, Form 12h-6, **6:29.20**

Iran Threat Reduction Act, prohibitions on U.S. companies and foreign subsidiaries, **6:13.50, 6:13.60**

Listing requirements, **3:5 to 3:7**

Listings, **6:2**

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:46 to 12:48**

Nasdaq traded securities, **6:3**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (1934)**

**—Cont'd**

Registration—Cont'd

Obligations triggered by, **6:2.50, 6:20**

Over-the-counter. See Over-the-counter and other widely held securities, above in this heading

Section 15(d), issuers that made U.S. registered offering, **6:18**

Section 12(b) registration, below in this heading

**Securities Offering Reform** (this index)

Successor issuers, **6:2.50, 6:29.30**

Traded, Nasdaq traded securities, **6:3**

Triggers, **6:2.50, 6:20**

U.S. registered offering, issuers that made, Section 15(d), **6:18**

Widely held securities

Over-the-counter. See Over-the-counter and other widely held securities, above in this heading

Termination of Section 12(g) registration, **6:33**

Trigger for registration, **6:2.50**

Reporting

Generally, **6:1, 6:21 et seq.**

See also Registration, above in this heading

Annual reports, **6:23**

Current reports, **6:25**

Deregistration, **6:29.10, 6:29.20**

Development banks, **6:27**

Exchange listed securities, leaving reporting system, **6:30, 6:31**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, **6:186**

Foreign government issuers, **6:27**

Foreign integrated disclosure system, Form 20-F, **6:28**

Form 20-F, foreign integrated disclosure system, **6:28**

Interim reports, **6:24**

Leaving the reporting system, **6:29 et seq.**

Listings, **6:30 to 6:32**

Nasdaq listed securities, leaving reporting system, **6:32**

New York Stock Exchange, exchange listed securities, leaving reporting system, **6:31**

Over 5 percent shareholders, reports of, **6:26**

Proxy materials and reports to shareholders, **6:35**

Publicly offered securities, suspension of Section 15(d) reporting, **6:34**

Section 16 reporting, below

Widely held securities, termination of Section 12(g) registration, **6:33**

Resource extraction issuers, disclosure of payments to governments, **6:23.30, 6:23.40**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (1934)****—Cont'd**

- Rule 15a-6. **Broker-Dealers** (this index)
- Rule 12g3-2(a), too few U.S. shareholders, **6:7**
- Rule 12g3-2(b), information supplying exemption. Over-the-counter and other widely held securities, above
- Safety of mines, SEC rules for disclosure, **6:23.60**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act
  - Criminal penalties, **6:185**
  - Officers and directors subject to SEA Section 16. **Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)
- Section 15(d), issuers that made U.S. registered offering, **6:18**
- Section 12(b) registration
  - Listing requirements, **3:6**
  - Successor issuers, **6:17**
- Section 12(g) registration. See Over-the-counter and other widely held securities, above in this heading
- Section 13 reporting, beneficial ownership
  - Exempt investors, Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:5**
  - Institutional, qualified institutional investors, Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:6**
  - Passive investors, Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:7**
  - Qualified institutional investors, Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:6**
  - Section 13(d) and Schedule 13D, **11:3**
  - Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:4 to 11:8**
- Section 16 reporting, beneficial ownership
  - Generally, **11:14 to 11:33**
  - Acquisitions, Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:28**
  - Calculating profit, Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:25**
  - Consequences for failure to timely file under Section 16(a), **11:23**
  - Contents of filings, reporting under Section 16(a), **11:21**
  - Derivative and nonderivative securities, **11:20**
  - Disclosure of delinquent Section 16(a) filings, **11:23**
  - Equity security and class, **11:18**
  - Exempt transactions, Section 16(a), **11:22**
  - Exempt transactions, Section 16(c) prohibition on short selling, **11:30**
  - Exempt transactions, Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:26**
  - Failure to timely file under Section 16(a), **11:23**
  - Issuer's disclosure of delinquent Section 16(a) filings, **11:23**
  - Mergers and acquisitions, Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:28**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (1934)****—Cont'd**

- Section 16 reporting, beneficial ownership
  - Cont'd
  - Officers and directors, **11:16**
  - Persons subject to Section 16, **11:15 to 11:18**
  - Sanctions for failing to timely file under Section 16(a), **11:23**
  - Section 16(e) arbitrage transactions, **11:33**
  - Section 16(d) market making, **11:32**
  - Section 16(c) prohibition on short selling, **11:29**
  - Section 16(a) requirements, **11:19 to 11:23**
  - Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:24 to 11:28**
  - Security-based swaps, application of Section 16 beneficial ownership regulatory provisions, **11:31**
  - 10 percent holders and beneficial ownership for other purposes, **11:17**
  - Time to file under Section 16(a), **11:21**
  - Transfers among affiliates, Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:27**
- Section 16(a) reporting, beneficial ownership
  - Beneficial ownership reporting requirements, **11:19 to 11:23**
  - Contents of filing, **11:21**
  - Derivative and nonderivative securities, **11:20**
  - Disclosure of delinquent filings, **11:23**
  - Exempt transactions, **11:22**
  - Forms 3, 4, and 5, generally, **11:19**
  - Nonderivative securities, **11:20**
  - Sanctions for failing to timely file, **11:23**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)
  - Time to file, **11:21**
- Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery
  - Generally, **11:24 to 11:28**
  - Calculating profit, **11:25**
  - Exemption transactions, **11:26**
  - Mergers and acquisitions, **11:28**
  - Transfers among affiliates, **11:27**
- Section 16(c) prohibition on short selling
  - Generally, **11:29**
  - Exempt transactions, **11:30**
- Section 16(d) market making, **11:32**
- Section 16(e) arbitrage transactions, **11:33**
- Security-based swaps, application of Section 16 beneficial ownership regulatory provisions, **11:31**
- Successor issuer status
  - Termination following M&A transaction, Form 12h-6, **6:29.30**
  - Trigger for registration, **6:2.50**
- Successor issuers under Section 12(b) or 12(g), **6:17**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (1934)**

—**Cont'd**

- 10 percent holders and beneficial ownership for other purposes, **11:17**
- Traded, Nasdaq traded securities, **6:3**
- Triggers for registration, **6:2.50, 6:20**
- U.S. registered offering, issuers that made, Section 15(d), **6:18**
- Voluntarily claiming exemption, **6:16**
- Widely held securities
  - Termination of Section 12(g) registration, **6:33**
  - Trigger for registration, **6:2.50**
- XBRL format for reporting on Form SD, **6:23.50**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

- See **Securities Exchange Act (1934)** (this index)

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE BIDS**

- Canadian MJSD, **12:125**

**SECURITIES INVESTOR PROTECTION ACT OF 1970**

- Generally, **1:9**

**SECURITIES INVESTOR PROTECTION CORPORATION (SIPC)**

- Broker-Dealers** (this index)

**SECURITIES OFFERING REFORM**

- Oral communications. Prospectuses and oral communications, below
- Securities Act
  - Disclosure under SA, above
  - Registration under SA, above
- Well-known seasoned issuers (WKSI)
  - Classification of issuers, **2:16 to 2:19**
  - Registration, **2:143 to 2:149**

**SECURITY**

- Blue Sky Law, definitions, **15:9**

**SECURITY-BASED SWAPS**

- Beneficial ownership by persons who purchase or sell, **11:10**
- Section 16 beneficial ownership regulatory provisions, **11:31**
- Tender and exchange offers, **11:10, 11:31**

**SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCTS**

- Generally, **1:26**

**SECURITY HOLDERS**

- Canadian MJSD, **12:136**

**SELECTED DEALERS AGREEMENT**

- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:11**

**SELF-REGULATORY ORGANIZATIONS (SROS)**

- See **Broker-Dealers** (this index)

**SELF-TENDERS**

- Exchange Act reporting, issuer purchases of own equity securities, **11:190**
- General antifraud and antimanipulation provisions, **11:197**
- Going private, **11:191**
- Issuer purchases of its own equity securities
  - Generally, **11:192 to 11:196**
  - Communications, **11:194**
  - Exemptions, **11:196**
  - Filing, disclosure, and dissemination, **11:193**
  - Issuer tender offers, **11:192**
  - Manner of making the offer, **11:195**
- Rule 13e-3, **11:191**
- Rule 13e-4, **11:192**
- Tender and exchange offers. See entries throughout this heading

**SENIOR EXECUTIVES**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**SENSITIVITY**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:222**

**SERVICE OF PROCESS**

- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:18, 12:20**

**SHARED EXPENSES**

- Blue Sky Law, public offering of securities by foreign issuers, **15:27**

**SHAREHOLDER COMMUNICATION**

- Beneficial ownership reports, **11:8**
- Canadian MJSD, **12:142**
- Tender and exchange offers, **11:8**

**SHAREHOLDER DIRECT REGISTRATION SYSTEM**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:183 to 3:185**

**SHARING OF EXPENSES**

- Blue Sky Law, public offering of securities by foreign issuers, **15:27**

**SHELF OFFERINGS**

- Trust Indenture Act, **4:42**

**SHELF REGISTRATION**

- Global offerings, **10:19, 10:84**
- Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)
- Sovereigns
  - Generally, **4:16 to 4:19**
  - Eligible issuers, **4:17**
  - Original shelf registration procedures, **4:18**
  - Revised shelf registration procedures, **4:19**

**SHELL COMPANIES**

- Private placement, Rule 144 and former shell companies, **5:35**

## **SHORT SALES**

- Global offerings, Regulation M, **10:149**
- Section 16(c) prohibition, beneficial ownership reporting, **11:29, 11:30**
- Tender and exchange offers, **11:29**

## **SHORT-SWING PROFIT RECOVERY**

- Section 16(b), beneficial ownership reporting, **11:24 to 11:28**

## **SIA APPROACH: FORMER RULE 434**

- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:93**

## **SIDE-BY-SIDE OFFERINGS**

- Private placement, **5:60**

## **SIGNATURE**

- Electronic Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act, **2:223**
- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:89, 2:125, 2:223**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:41**

## **SIGNATURE PAGE**

- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:21**

## **SIMULTANEOUS SERVICE**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:110**

## **SMALL BUSINESS CONCERNS**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, issuer reporting and disclosure, **6:66**

## **SOFT DOLLAR ARRANGEMENTS**

- Investment advisers, **14:52**

## **SOLICITATIONS**

- Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:99**

## **SOLICITORS**

- Investment advisers, **14:34, 14:37**

## **SOUTH AMERICA**

- Accounting and financial matters, **7:302 to 7:307**

## **SOVEREIGN OFFERINGS**

- Blue Sky Law, public offering of securities by foreign issuers, **15:42**

## **SOVEREIGNS**

- Generally, **4:2 et seq.**
- Additional disclosure traditionally provided, **4:12**
- Disclosure, additional disclosure traditionally provided, **4:12**
- Disclosure, which entity provides, **4:8**
- Exhibits, **4:15**
- Financial statements, **4:14**
- Foreign governments
  - Instrumentalities of, **4:6**
  - Issuers, Exchange Act, **6:27**

## **SOVEREIGNS—Cont'd**

- Foreign governments—Cont'd
  - Schedule B, eligible for, **4:6**
- Government agencies, **4:5**
- Government corporations, **4:4**
- Instrumentalities of foreign governments, **4:6**
- Issuers, Exchange Act, **6:27**
- Registration statement, information required in
  - Generally, **4:9 et seq.**
  - Additional disclosure traditionally provided, **4:12**
  - Disclosure, additional disclosure traditionally provided, **4:12**
- Exhibits, **4:15**
- Financial statements, **4:14**
- Issuer related information, **4:13**
- Regulatory scheme, **4:10**
- Rules 490-493, information required by, **4:11**
- Schedule B, information required by, **4:11**
- Regulatory scheme, **4:10**
- Rules 490-493, information required by, **4:11**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:90**
- Schedule B
  - Certain multinational organizations, securities of, **4:7**
- Eligible for, **4:6**
- Foreign governments, instrumentalities of, **4:6**
- Government agencies, **4:5**
- Government corporations, **4:4**
- Information required by, **4:11**
- Instrumentalities of foreign governments, **4:6**
- Issuers eligible for, generally, **4:3 et seq.**
- Securities of certain multinational organizations, **4:7**
- Shelf registration
  - Generally, **4:16 to 4:19**
  - Eligible issuers, **4:17**
  - Original shelf registration procedures, **4:18**
  - Revised shelf registration procedures, **4:19**
- Trust Indenture Act, **4:20**

## **SOX**

- See **Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **SPINOFFS**

- Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:169**

## **SPLIT-DOLLAR LIFE INSURANCE**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:126**

## **SPONSORED (LEVEL ONE)**

- American Depositary Receipts, **8:24**

## **SPONSORED AND UNSPONSORED FACILITIES**

- American Depositary Receipts, **8:14 to 8:17**

## STABILIZATION

**Global Offerings** (this index)

## STATE AUTHORITY

Investment advisers, **14:34 to 14:37**

## STATE LAWS

**Blue Sky Laws** (this index)

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD)

Generally, **12:70 to 12:74**

Exchange offers, **12:74**

Federal preemption, **12:71**

Issues where no federal preemption, **12:72**

Rights offerings, **12:73**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:4, 2:5, 2:166, 2:188**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:172, 7:98**

Securities laws, generally, **1:10**

Tender and exchange offers, **11:173 to 11:175**

## STATE OF INCORPORATION

Blue Sky Law, **15:34**

## STATE REVIEW (CER-1)

Blue Sky Law, **App. 15B**

## STATUTORY SCHEME

See also **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

Global offerings, Regulation M, **10:64**

## STOCK DIVIDENDS

Blue Sky Law, public offering of securities by foreign issuers, **15:43**

## STOCK-EXCHANGE LINKAGES

Foreign broker-dealers, exemptions for, **13:111**

## SUBMISSIONS

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:48**

Securities Exchange Act (1934), **6:14**

## SUBSIDIARIES

See also **Affiliates** (this index)

Canadian MJSD, **12:95**

## SUBSTANTIAL COMPLIANCE

Private placement, **5:26**

## SUBSTANTIAL U.S. MARKET INTEREST

Regulation S, **9:31**

## SUBSTANTIVE CONSIDERATION

Blue sky laws, public offering of securities by foreign issuers, **15:18 et seq.**

## SUBSTANTIVE REGULATION

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

## SUCCESSOR ISSUERS

Canadian MJSD, **12:96**

Securities Exchange Act (1934), **6:17**

## SUCCESSOR ISSUERS—Cont'd

Termination of status following M&A transaction, **6:29.30**

Trigger for Exchange Act registration, **6:2.50**

## SUMMARY PROSPECTUSES

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:50**

## SUPERVISED PERSONS

Investment advisers, SEC-registered investment advisers and their supervised persons, scope of state authority over, **14:34, 14:36**

## SUPERVISION

**Broker-Dealers** (this index)

## SUPPLEMENTARY SALES LITERATURE

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:70**

## SUPPLEMENTS

Canadian MJSD, Rule 415, **12:103**

## SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS

Canadian MJSD, **12:130**

## SUSPENSION OF TRADING

Global offerings, **10:135**

## SWAPS

Generally, **1:21, 1:24, 1:32**

## SYNDICATE ACTIVITIES

See **Global Offerings** (this index)

## TAIWAN

Accounting and financial matters, stock bonuses, **7:320**

## TAKEDOWNS

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:91**

## TAKEOVER STATUTES

Tender and exchange offers, **11:174**

## TAMPERING OF RECORDS

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:182**

## TAXATION

Income taxes, ASC 740, **7:129**

Regulation S, **9:48**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:79, 7:88**

Securities, **1:31**

## TELEPHONIC RELEASES

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:99**

## TEMPORARY FREEZE AUTHORITY

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:150**

## TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS

Generally, **11:1 et seq.**



**TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS—Cont'd**

See also **Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD)** (this index)

A/B debt exchange offer, emerging growth companies, **11:144**

Confidential submission, **11:145**

Debt securities and debt limits, **11:146**

Acquisitions, foreign governments, Exon-Florio Amendment, **11:186**

Activity level identification, large traders, **11:53**

Advantages in marketing and IPO procedures for research reports, emerging growth companies, **11:138**

Amended Form 13H filings, **11:58**

Annual filing of Form 13H with SEC, **11:57**

Antimanipulation rules

Purchases of issuer's commons stock in open market, Rule 10b-18, **11:148**

Regulation M, **11:147**

Rule 10b-5, **11:148**

Safe harbor, **11:148**

Sections 9(a)(2) and 10(b), **11:148**

Self-tenders, issuer purchases of its own equity securities, **11:197**

Application of the unbundling rule to mergers and acquisitions, proxy, **11:112**

Auditing requirements, emerging growth companies, **11:135**

Auditor attestation of internal controls, emerging growth companies, **11:136**

Background, large trader reporting, **11:45**

Beneficial ownership

Generally, **11:9, 11:10**

Reports. See Beneficial ownership reports, below in this heading

Beneficial ownership reports

Generally, **11:2 et seq.**

Exempt investors, Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:5**

Group, **11:11**

Institutional investors, qualified, Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:6**

Passive investors, Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:7**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:197**

Qualified institutional investors, Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:6**

Schedule 13D contents, **11:12**

Schedule 13G contents, **11:13**

Section 13(d) and Schedule 13D, **11:3**

Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:4 to 11:8**

Section 16 reporting, below

Securities Exchange Act reporting. Section 16 reporting, below

**TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS—Cont'd**

Beneficial ownership reports—Cont'd

Security-based swaps, persons who purchase or sell, **11:10**

Shareholder communications and Schedule 13G eligibility, **11:8**

Broker-dealers. Registered broker-dealers, below

Business combinations, including Section 3(a)(10), Securities Act registration, exemptions, **11:118**

Business combinations. See International tender offers and business combinations involving foreign targets, below in this heading

Calculating 21 days before the roadshow, Section 6(e), emerging growth companies, **11:131**

Calculating profit, Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:25**

Communications

Generally, **11:122 to 11:125**

Bids and bidding, disclosure requirements in third-party tender offers subject to Regulation 14D, **11:81**

Exemptions. See Registered exchange offers, below in this heading

Self-tenders, **11:194**

Compliance, ensuring

Large trader reporting, **11:67, 11:72**

Registered broker-dealers, **11:72**

Compulsory acquisition, **11:155**

Confidentiality

Institutional investment managers reporting, **11:40**

Large trader reporting, Form 13H information, **11:63**

Confidential submission

Process, emerging growth companies, **11:141**

Section 6(e), emerging growth companies, **11:129 to 11:132**

Confidential treatment of the preliminary merger proxy statement is available in limited circumstances, **11:114**

Consequences, Securities Act registration, **11:92**

Consequences for failure to timely file under Section 16(a), **11:23**

Consequences of failure to timely file Form 13H, **11:64**

Constitutional issues, larger trader filing 13H with SEC, **11:63**

Contents of filing

Beneficial ownership reporting under Section 16(a), **11:21**

Form 13H, larger trader filing with SEC, **11:62**

Control, parent company level registration of large traders, **11:52**

Corporate law, state laws

Generally, **11:175**

Poison pills, **11:176**

**TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS—Cont'd**

- Deferred compliance with new accounting rules, emerging growth companies, **11:134**
- Definitions
  - Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 (Hart-Scott Act), **11:179**
  - Tender offers, **11:77**
- Derivative and nonderivative securities, Section 16(a) reporting, **11:20**
- Disclosures
  - Generally, **11:108 to 11:111**
  - Bids and Bidding** (this index)
  - Delinquent Section 16(a) filings, **11:23**
  - Internet. See International tender offers and business combinations involving foreign targets, below in this heading
  - Large traders, self-identification to registered broker-dealers, **11:66**
  - Preliminary merger negotiations, communications, **11:125**
  - Self-tenders, **11:193**
  - Target disclosure requirements in third-party tender offers subject to Regulation 14D, below
- Discretion, exercise by large trader, **11:49**
- Dissemination
  - Generally, **11:115**
  - Delivery of a single proxy statement to two or more securityholders sharing the same address (householding), **11:116**
  - Self-tenders, **11:193**
- Emerging growth companies, **11:126 to 11:46**
- Equity security and class, Section 16 reporting, **11:18**
- Exemptions
  - Accommodations from US requirements, **11:163, 11:164**
  - Auditing requirements, emerging growth companies, **11:135**
  - Communications exemptions. See Registered exchange offers, below in this heading
  - Exon-Florio Amendment, transactions, **11:187**
  - Foreign targets. See International tender offers and business combinations involving foreign targets, below in this heading
  - Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 (Hart-Scott Act), acquisitions, **11:181**
  - Internet, SEC interpretive guidance, cross-border tender offers and business combinations, **11:168**
  - Investors, Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:5**
  - Section 4(a)(2), Regulation D, Regulation S, **11:93**
  - Section 16(c) prohibition, beneficial ownership reporting, **11:30**

**TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS—Cont'd**

- Exemptions—Cont'd
  - Section 16(a) reporting, beneficial ownership, **11:22**
  - Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, beneficial ownership reporting, **11:26**
  - Securities Act registration, business combinations, including Section 3(a)(10), **11:118**
  - Self-tenders, **11:196**
  - Tender and exchange offers, **11:30**
  - Tier I and Tier II, foreign targets. See International tender offers and business combinations involving foreign targets, below in this heading
- Exemptive authority, large trader reporting, **11:75**
- Exercise of investment discretion by large trader, **11:49**
- Exon-Florio Amendment, **11:185 to 11:187**
- Failure to timely file
  - Form 13F, **11:42**
  - Form 13H, large trader reporting, **11:64**
  - Section 16(a), **11:23**
- Fair market value of Section 13(f) securities, institutional investment manager reporting, **11:37**
- Federal statutes, generally, **11:177 to 11:187**
- Filing
  - Generally, **11:113**
  - Section 6(e), emerging growth companies, **11:130**
  - Self-tenders, **11:193**
- Filing requirements, **11:177 to 11:187**
  - Institutional investment managers, **11:38**
- Filing threshold for institutional investment managers, calculation fair market value of Section 13(f) securities, **11:37**
- Financial statements, emerging growth companies, **11:142**
- Flowback in international exchange offers, foreign targets
  - Generally, **11:152**
  - Resales, below
- Foreign entities, application of large trader reporting requirements, **11:73**
- Foreign targets. See International tender offers and business combinations involving foreign targets, below in this heading
- Form F-4. See Registered exchange offers, below in this heading
- Form 13F amendment, institutional investment managers reporting, **11:41**
- Form 13H, filing with SEC
  - Amended filings, **11:58**
  - Annual filing, **11:57**
  - Confidentiality of Form 13H information, **11:63**

**TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS—Cont'd**

Form 13H, filing with SEC—Cont'd

- Consequences of failure to timely file Form 13H, **11:64**
- Constitutional issues, **11:63**
- Contents of Form 13H, **11:62**
- Failure to timely file Form 13H, **11:64**
- Identification of filer, **11:56**
- Inactive status, **11:59**
- Initial filing, **11:56**
- Large trader reporting, generally, **11:55 to 11:64**
- Reactivated status, **11:60**
- Submission of initial filing, **11:56**
- Termination filings, **11:61**
- Time for submission of initial filing, **11:56**
- Forms 3, 4, and 5, Section 16(a) beneficial ownership reporting, **11:19**
- Forward acquisition, reverse merger, lose status, emerging growth companies, **11:143**
- Group, beneficial ownership reports, **11:11**
- Gun jumping, Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 (Hart-Scott Act), **11:182**
- Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 (Hart-Scott Act), **11:178 to 11:184**
- Householding, dissemination, delivery of a single proxy statement to two or more securityholders sharing the same address, **11:116**
- Identification, Form 13H filer, **11:56**
- Identification as large trader, **11:48 to 11:52**
- Identifying activity level of large traders, **11:53**
- Inactive status, large trader Form 13H requirements, **11:59**
- Information about the acquiror and the target, disclosure, **11:109**
- Information to be reported by institutional investment managers, **11:39**
- Initial determination, compliance with large trader requirements, **11:67**
- Initial filing of Form 13H with SEC, **11:56**
- Institutional investment manager reporting
  - Generally, **11:34 to 11:43**
  - Rule 13f-1 and Form 13F, below
  - Rule 13f-1 and Form 13F reporting, below
  - Section 13(f), generally, **11:34**
  - Section 13(f) reporting, persons subject to, **11:36**
- Institutional investors, qualified institutional investors, Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:6**
- International tender offers and business combinations involving foreign targets
  - Generally, **11:150 et seq.**
  - Compulsory acquisition, **11:155**

**TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS—Cont'd**

International tender offers and business combinations involving foreign targets—Cont'd

- Exclusion of U.S. shareholders
  - Avoiding U.S. jurisdictional means, **11:151**
  - SEC guidance, avoiding U.S. tender offer and registration rules, **11:170**
- Exemptions to facilitate U.S. participation, generally, **11:156 to 11:161**
- Flowback in international exchange offers, foreign targets, above
- Internet. **Interpretive Guidance** (this index)
- Jurisdictional means, exclusion of U.S. shareholders by avoiding, **11:151**
- Other SEC accommodations to facilitate U.S. participation. **Accommodations** (this index)
- Resales, below
- Rule 802, exchange offer (and business combination) exemption, **11:161**
- Rule 14e-5 and Regulation M, **11:160**
- Tender offer exemptions, generally, **11:157 to 11:160**
- Tier I exemption
  - Generally, **11:158**
  - Rule 14d-1(c), **11:158**
- Tier II exemption
  - Generally, **11:159**
  - Rule 14d-1(d), **11:159**
- Internet. **Interpretive Guidance** (this index)
- Interpretive Guidance** (this index)
- IPO registration statement, Section 6(e), emerging growth companies, **11:129**
- JOBS Act, opt-in right, emerging growth companies, **11:139**
- Jurisdiction, exclusion of U.S. shareholders by avoiding U.S. jurisdictional means, international tender offers and business combinations involving foreign targets, **11:151**
- Jurisdictional tests, Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 (Hart-Scott Act), **11:180**
- Large trader reporting
  - Additional information, request for, **11:65**
  - Background, **11:45**
  - Compliance, steps to ensure, **11:67**
  - Exemptive authority, **11:75**
  - Factors considered by SEC under Section 13(h), **11:74**
  - Filing Form 13H with SEC, **11:55 to 11:64**
  - Foreign entities, application of requirements, **11:73**
  - Form 13H, filing with SEC, **11:55 to 11:64**
  - Initial determination, ensuring compliance, **11:67**
  - Monitoring, ensuring compliance, **11:67**

**TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS—Cont'd**

- Large trader reporting—Cont'd
  - Purposes, **11:45**
  - Registered broker-dealers, **11:68 to 11:72**
  - Related matters, **11:73 to 11:75**
  - Requests for additional information, **11:65**
  - Requirements, **11:46 to 11:75**
  - Section 13(h) and Rule 13h-1, generally, **11:44**
  - Self-identification to registered broker-dealers, **11:66**
  - Status as large trader, filing requirements, **11:47 to 11:54**
  - Subsequent monitoring, ensuring compliance, **11:67**
  - Training, ensuring compliance, **11:67**
  - Written procedures, ensuring compliance, **11:67**
- Lock-up agreements, **11:121**
- LTID suffixes, use by large traders, **11:51**
- Margin regulations, **11:172**
- Minority-owned entities, large trader filing requirements, **11:52**
- Monitoring
  - Large traders, ensuring compliance with requirements, **11:67**
  - Registered broker-dealers, **11:71**
- Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD)** (this index)
- Non-GAAP financial measures in disclosure for business combinations: Exemptions from Regulation G and Item 10(e) of Regulation S-K, communications, **11:124**
- Notification and report form, Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 (Hart-Scott Act), **11:182**
- Office of Inspector General, review of SEC's Section 13(f) institutional investment manager reporting requirements, **11:43**
- Officers and directors, Section 16 reporting, beneficial ownership, **11:16**
- Opt-in right, emerging growth companies, **11:139**
- Overview and consequences, Securities Act registration, **11:92**
- Parent company level registration, large trader filing requirements, **11:50 to 11:52**
- Passive investors, Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:7**
- Penalties, Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 (Hart-Scott Act), **11:183**
- Plain English requirement, disclosure, **11:110**
- Poison pills, state corporate law, **11:175**
- Preliminary merger negotiations, communications, disclosure, **11:125**
- Preliminary merger proxy statement, confidential treatment, **11:114**

**TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS—Cont'd**

- Proxies
  - Application of the unbundling rule to mergers and acquisitions, **11:112**
  - Solicitation rules, Regulation 14A, **11:107**
  - Solicitation safe harbor, Rule 14a-12, communications, **11:123**
  - Statement/prospectus combination, updated, **11:120**
- Public filing, Section 6(e), emerging growth companies, **11:132**
- Purposes of large trader reporting, **11:45**
- Qualifications, emerging growth companies, **11:127**
- Qualified institutional investors, Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:6**
- Reactivated status, large trader Form 13H requirements, **11:60**
- Reduced executive compensation disclosure, emerging growth companies, **11:137**
- Reduced financial disclosure requirements in IPO registration statements, emerging growth companies, **11:133**
- Registered broker-dealers
  - Compliance, ensuring, large traders, **11:72**
  - Large trader reporting, generally, **11:66, 11:68 to 11:72**
  - Monitoring requirements, large traders, **11:71**
  - Recordkeeping requirements, large traders, **11:69**
  - Reporting requirements, large traders, **11:70**
  - Self-identification as large trader, **11:66**
- Registered equity securities, third party tender offers, **11:90**
- Registered exchange offers
  - Generally, **11:94 et seq.**
  - Early commencement, Rule 162, **11:96**
  - Form F-4, generally, **11:98 to 11:100**
  - Securities Act communications exemptions, Rules 165, 166, 135, 145, and 425, **11:95**
- Securities Act registration
  - Generally, **11:92 to 11:100**
  - Foreign issuers, draft registration statement, confidential SEC review before public filing, **11:103**
  - Form F-4, generally, **11:98 to 11:100**
  - Information not required in prospectus but required in Part II of registration statement, **11:100**
  - Process, **11:102**
  - Prospectus contents, **11:99**
  - Requesting continued confidential treatment of specified information in the registration statement and related correspondence, **11:105**
  - Signatures, **11:101**

**TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS—Cont'd**

Registered exchange offers—Cont'd

Securities Act registration—Cont'd

Submitting a draft registration statement  
may trigger the filing requirements of  
FINRA Corporate Financing Rule,  
**11:104**

Registration

Larger traders, **11:50 to 11:54**Large traders, **11:53**

Registered exchange offers, above

Registration process and related matters, below

Voluntary registration of large traders, **11:54**

Registration process and related matters

Generally, **11:119 to 11:121**Lock-up agreements, **11:121**

Proxy statement/prospectus combination,  
updated, **11:120**

Regulation 14A, proxy solicitation rules, **11:107**

Regulation D

**Bids and Bidding** (this index)

Target disclosure requirements. See Target  
disclosure requirements in third-party  
tender offers, below in this heading

Regulation M

Antimanipulation rules, **11:147**

International tender offers and business  
combinations involving foreign targets,  
**11:160**

Regulation S, exemptions, **11:93**

Reports. See Beneficial ownership reports, above  
in this heading

Resales

Affiliates of target, **11:154**Cross-border exemptions, **11:153, 11:154**

Restricted securities, exchange offer or busi-  
ness combination, **11:149**

Securityholders target, **11:153**

Research reports, emerging growth companies,  
advantages in marketing and IPO  
procedures, **11:138**

Reverse merger, forward acquisition, lose status,  
emerging growth companies, **11:143**

Roadshow, Section 6(e), emerging growth  
companies, **11:131**

Rule 135, registered exchange offers and Securi-  
ties Act communications exemptions, **11:95**

Rule 145, registered exchange offers and Securi-  
ties Act communications exemptions, **11:95**

Rule 162, registered exchange offers, **11:96**

Rule 165, registered exchange offers and Securi-  
ties Act communications exemptions, **11:95**

Rule 166, registered exchange offers and Securi-  
ties Act communications exemptions, **11:95**

Rule 425, registered exchange offers and Securi-  
ties Act communications exemptions, **11:95**

**TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS—Cont'd**

Rule 802, international tender offers and business  
combinations involving foreign targets—  
exchange offer (and business combination)  
exemption, **11:161**

Rule 13e-3, **11:191**Rule 13e-4, **11:192**

Rule 14e-5, international tender offers and busi-  
ness combinations involving foreign targets,  
**11:160**

Rule 13f-1 and Form 13F

Confidential treatment, **11:40**Contents of report, **11:39**Failure to file Form 13F, **11:42**

Fair market value of Section 13(f) securities,  
filing threshold calculations, **11:37**

Filing requirement, **11:38**

Filing threshold, calculation fair market value  
of Section 13(f) securities, **11:37**

Form 13F amendment, **11:41**Information to be reported, **11:39**

Institutional investment manager reporting,  
generally, **11:35**

Office of Inspector General, review of SEC's  
Section 13(f) reporting requirements,  
**11:43**

Persons subject to Section 13(f), **11:36**Section 13(f), persons subject to, **11:36**Untimely filing of Form 13F, **11:42**Schedule 13D contents, **11:12**Schedule 13G contents, **11:13**Section 4(a)(2), exemptions, **11:93**

Section 5(d), test the waters marketing, emerging  
growth companies, **11:128**

Section 6(e), emerging growth companies,  
**11:129 to 11:132**

Section 13(f). Institutional investment manager  
reporting, above

Section 13(h), factors considered by SEC, large  
trader reporting, **11:74**

Section 13(h) and Rule 13h-1. Large trader  
reporting, above

Section 13(d) and Schedule 13D, **11:3**Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:4 to 11:8**

Section 13reporting, beneficial ownership

Exempt investors, Section 13(g) and Schedule  
13G, **11:5**

Institutional, qualified institutional investors,  
Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:6**

Passive investors, Section 13(g) and Schedule  
13G, **11:7**

Qualified institutional investors, Section 13(g)  
and Schedule 13G, **11:6**

Section 13(d) and Schedule 13D, **11:3**Section 13(g) and Schedule 13G, **11:4 to 11:8**

Section 16reporting, beneficial ownership

Generally, **11:14 to 11:33**



**TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS—Cont'd**

Section 16 reporting, beneficial ownership—Cont'd

- Acquisitions, Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:28**
- Beneficial ownership, **11:14 to 11:33**
- Calculating profit, Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:25**
- Consequences for failure to timely file under Section 16(a), **11:23**
- Contents of filings, reporting under Section 16(a), **11:21**
- Derivative and nonderivative securities, **11:20**
- Disclosure of delinquent Section 16(a) filings, **11:23**
- Equity security and class, **11:18**
- Exempt transactions
  - Section 16(a), **11:22**
  - Section 16(c) prohibition on short selling, **11:30**
  - Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:26**
- Failure to timely file under Section 16(a), **11:23**
- Issuer's disclosure of delinquent Section 16(a) filings, **11:23**
- Mergers and acquisitions, Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:28**
- Officers and directors, **11:16**
- Persons subject to Section 16, **11:15 to 11:18**
- Sanctions for failing to timely file under Section 16(a), **11:23**
- Section 16(e) arbitrage transactions, **11:33**
- Section 16(d) market making, **11:32**
- Section 16(c) prohibition on short selling, **11:30**
- Section 16(c) prohibition on short selling, below
- Section 16(a) requirements, **11:19 to 11:23**
- Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:24 to 11:28**
- Security-based swaps, application of Section 16 beneficial ownership regulatory provisions, **11:31**
- 10 percent holders and beneficial ownership for other purposes, **11:17**
- Time to file under Section 16(a), **11:21**
- Transfers among affiliates, Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery, **11:27**

Section 16(a) reporting

- Beneficial ownership reporting requirements, **11:19 to 11:23**
- Contents of filing, **11:21**
- Derivative and nonderivative securities, **11:20**
- Disclosure of delinquent filings, **11:23**
- Exempt transactions, **11:22**
- Forms 3, 4, and 5, generally, **11:19**

**TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS—Cont'd**

Section 16(a) reporting—Cont'd

- Nonderivative securities, **11:20**
- Sanctions for failing to timely file, **11:23**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)
- Time to file, **11:21**

Section 16(b) short-swing profit recovery

- Generally, **11:24 to 11:28**
- Calculating profit, **11:25**
- Exemption transactions, **11:26**
- Mergers and acquisitions, **11:28**
- Transfers among affiliates, **11:27**

Section 16(c) prohibition on short selling

- Generally, **11:29**
- Exempt transactions, **11:30**

Section 16(d) market making, **11:32**

Section 16(e) arbitrage transactions, **11:33**

Securities Act registration

- Exemptions, business combinations, including Section 3(a)(10), **11:118**
- Registered exchange offers, **11:92 to 11:100**

Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)

- Filing Form 13H with SEC, **11:55 to 11:64**
- Section 13(h), factors considered by SEC, **11:74**

Security-based swaps

- Application of Section 16 beneficial ownership regulatory provisions, **11:31**
- Beneficial ownership by persons who purchase or sell, **11:10**

Self-identification to registered broker-dealers, large trader reporting, **11:66**

**Self-Tenders** (this index)

Shareholder communications and Schedule 13G eligibility, **11:8**

Signatures, registered exchange offers, Securities Act registration, **11:101**

State laws, **11:173 to 11:176**

Status as large trader, filing requirements

- Generally, **11:47**
- Activity level identification, **11:53**
- Control, parent company level registration, **11:52**
- Discretion, exercise by large trader, **11:49**
- Exercise of investment discretion, **11:49**
- Identification as large trader, **11:48 to 11:52**
- Identifying activity level, **11:53**
- LTID suffixes, use of, **11:51**
- Minority-owned entities, **11:52**
- Parent company level registration, **11:50 to 11:52**
- Registration at parent company level, **11:50 to 11:52**
- Use of LTID suffixes, **11:51**
- Voluntary registration, **11:54**

**TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS—Cont'd**

Submission of initial filing of Form 13H to SEC, **11:56**

Subsequent monitoring to ensure compliance with large trader requirements, **11:67**

Substantive and other requirements

Generally, **11:89 to 11:91**

All securities, third party tender offers, **11:91**

Registered equity securities, **11:90**

Third party tender offers, **11:90, 11:91**

Takeover statutes, **11:174**

Target disclosure requirements in third-party tender offers subject to Regulation 14D

Generally, **11:84 et seq.**

Regulatory scheme, **11:85 to 11:88**

Rule 14d-9, **11:87**

Rule 13e-1, **11:88**

Schedule 14d-9, **11:87**

Tender offers, generally, **11:76 et seq.**

Termination filings, large trader, **11:61**

Test the waters

Communications with QIBs and institutional accredited investors, emerging growth companies, **11:140**

Marketing, emerging growth companies, **11:128**

Third parties

All securities, **11:91**

**Bids and Bidding** (this index)

Registered equity securities, **11:90**

Target disclosure requirements. See Target disclosure requirements subject to Regulation 14D, above

Tier I exemption. See International tender offers and business combinations involving foreign targets, above

Tier II exemption. See International tender offers and business combinations involving foreign targets, above

Time, Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 (Hart-Scott Act), **11:184**

Time to file

Form 13F, **11:42**

Initial filing of Form 13H, **11:56**

Section 16(a), beneficial ownership reporting, **11:21**

Training, ensuring compliance with large trader requirements, **11:67**

Transactions, disclosure, **11:111**

Types of business combinations and the U.S. regulatory scheme, **11:106**

Untimely filing of Form 13F by institutional investment managers, **11:42**

Using the confidential submission process in Section 6(e) to submit a draft registration statement for an A/B debt exchange offer on Form F-4 (or S-4), **11:145**

**TENDER AND EXCHANGE OFFERS—Cont'd**

Vendor placements, **11:171**

Voluntary registration of large traders, **11:54**

Waiting periods, Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 (Hart-Scott Act), **11:182**

Whether debt securities issued in an A/B debt exchange offer count towards the \$ 1 billion debt limit for determining whether an issuer has lost its EGC status under Section 2(a)(19)(C), **11:146**

Written procedures, ensuring compliance with large trader requirements, **11:67**

**10 PERCENT HOLDERS**

Beneficial ownership reporting, **11:17**

**TERMINATION FILINGS**

Large trader Form 13H requirements, **11:61**

**THIRD PARTIES**

Private placement, Rule 144A, **5:48**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **6:77**

Tender offers

Generally. See **Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

**Bids and Bidding** (this index)

**THIRD-PARTY QUOTATION SYSTEMS**

Foreign broker-dealers, exemptions for, **13:110**

**THIRD-PARTY SERVICE PROVIDERS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **6:78**

**THIRD-PARTY TENDER OFFERS**

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:51**

**TIME OR DATE**

Blue sky laws, **15:32, 15:40, 15:45**

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 102, Rule 10b-18, safe harbor for issuer stock repurchases, conditions to be met, **10:134, 10:135**

New York Stock Exchange, timetable for original listing of equity on, **App. 3A**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

**Tender and Exchange Offers** (this index)

**TOMBSTONE ADVERTISEMENTS**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:48**

**TOUCHE**

Private placement, Rule 144A, **5:53**

**TRADES**

American Depositary Receipts, **8:10, 8:11 to 8:13**

Exchange Act registration, **6:3**

## TRADING BY MEMBERS OF EXCHANGES

Broker-Dealers (this index)

## TRADING FACILITY

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:99**

## TRAINING

Auditing, **7:37**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:76**

## TRANSFER OF LISTING

Notice of failure to meet standards, **3:201**

## TRANSITION PERIOD

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:50**

## TRANSITION RULES

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:163**

## TRIGGERING OBLIGATION

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:156**

Securities Exchange Act (1934), **6:2.50, 6:20**

## TRUSTEES

Trust Indenture Act, **4:40, 4:41**

## TRUST INDENTURE ACT

Generally, **1:6, 4:34 et seq.**

Applicability, **4:35**

Canadian MJSD, **12:121**

Conflict of interest, **4:43**

Content of indenture, **4:39**

Debtholder rights, **4:46**

Default, duties upon, **4:45**

Disclosure, **4:38**

Exemptions, **4:36**

Foreign issuers, **4:47**

Foreign trustees, **4:41**

Issuers, **4:47**

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:33**

Qualifications, generally, **4:37 et seq.**

Registration, **4:38**

Regulation S, **9:44**

Reports, **4:44**

Shelf offerings, **4:42**

Sovereigns, **4:20**

Trustees, **4:40, 4:41**

## TRUST INDENTURE ACT OF 1939

See **Trust Indenture Act** (this index)

## UNDERTAKINGS

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:18, 12:19**

## UNDERWRITERS AND UNDERWRITING

See also **Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)

## UNDERWRITERS AND UNDERWRITING

### —Cont'd

Blue Sky Law, public offering of securities by foreign issuers, **15:25**

Global offerings

Generally, **10:3 to 10:13, 10:59**

Choice of law, **10:11**

Contribution for liabilities, **10:9**

Force majeure clause, **10:8**

Foreign issuers

Equity offerings, underwriting arrangements, U.S. public offering, generally, **10:3, 10:4**

Margin securities, installment payment arrangements, **10:12**

Indemnification, **10:10**

Installment payment arrangements, **10:12**

Joint and several underwriting, **10:7**

Margin securities, installment payment arrangements, **10:12**

Payment arrangements, **10:12**

Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:71, 10:72**

Success fees, **10:13**

U.S. issuers, equity offerings, underwriting arrangements, U.S. public offering, generally, **10:5, 10:6**

Multijurisdictional Disclosure System (MJSD), **12:75 to 12:80**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:155**

## UNIFORM SECURITIES ACT

Blue Sky Laws (this index)

## UNITED KINGDOM

Accounting and financial matters, **7:309, 7:310**

Item 18 disclosures, **7:310**

## UNIT INVESTMENT TRUST

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:92**

## UNIT SECURITIES

Regulation S, **9:18**

## UNSOLICITED PURCHASES

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 102, **10:122**

## UNSOLICITED TRANSACTIONS

Global offerings, Regulation M, Rule 101, **10:96**

## UP-THE-LADDER

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:160**

## U.S. GAAS AUDIT REQUIREMENTS

Accounting and Financial Matters (this index)

## U.S. MARKETS

Generally, **3:2 to 3:4**

Regulation S, **9:31**

## **U.S. PERSONS**

See also **Regulation S** (this index)

## **U.S. PUBLIC OFFERING**

See **Global Offerings** (this index)

## **U.S. REGISTERED OFFERING**

Exchange Act registration, **6:18**

## **UTILITIES**

Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935 (PUHCA), generally, **1:5**

## **VALUE AND VALUATION**

Derivatives, fair values and, **7:281**  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:74**  
Trading activities that include non-exchange traded contracts accounted for at fair value, **7:238**

## **VARIATION**

Canadian MJSD, **12:133**

## **VENDOR PLACEMENTS**

Tender and exchange offers, **11:171**

## **VOLUNTARILY CLAIMING EXEMPTION**

Exchange Act, **6:16**

## **VOLUNTARY REGISTRATION**

Large trader filing requirements, **11:54**

## **VOTING**

Blue Sky Law, public offering of securities by foreign issuers, **15:24**  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:179, 3:182**

## **WAITING PERIOD**

**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer into U.S.** (this index)  
Tender and exchange offers, Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 (Hart-Scott Act), **11:182**

## **WAIVERS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **3:135 to 3:137, 3:139, 3:142, 3:186 to 3:188**

## **WALK-THROUGHS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, internal control over financial reporting, **6:73**

## **WARRANTS**

Blue Sky Law, **15:22, 15:25**  
Commodity-linked warrants, **4:48**  
Regulation S, **9:17**

## **WEBCAST RELEASES**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:99**

## **WEB SITES**

Broker-dealers, Internet referrals and web links, **13:13**

## **WEB SITES—Cont'd**

Public offerings of equity by foreign issuer into U.S., **2:103 to 2:105**  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:115**

## **WELL-KNOWN SEASONED ISSUERS (WKSIs)**

Automatic shelf registration  
Generally, **2:143**  
Base prospectus, omitted information, **2:145**  
Duration of registration statement, **2:149**  
Effectiveness, **2:148**  
Eligibility, **2:144**  
Fees, pay-as-you-go, **2:147**  
Immediate effectiveness, **2:148**  
Information omitted from base prospectus, **2:145**  
Pay-as-you-go registration fees, **2:147**  
Registration fees, **2:147**  
Registration of securities, **2:146**  
Registration statement, **2:149**  
Classification of issuers, **2:16 to 2:19**  
Determination date for WKSI status, **2:19**  
Ineligible issuers, **2:17**  
Majority-owned subsidiaries, **2:18**  
Pre-filing period, **2:43**  
Qualification requirements, generally, **2:16**  
Registration, **2:143 to 2:149**  
Written offers by WKSIs within 30 days prior to filing, **2:43**

## **WHISTLEBLOWER**

Dodd-Frank Act, SEC whistleblower rules, **6:166.10**  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:166, 6:178**

## **WIRE FRAUD**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **6:185**

## **WITHDRAWAL**

American Depositary Receipts, **8:13**  
Broker-dealers, **13:146, 13:147**  
Investment advisers, **14:41**  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **7:16**

## **WITNESSES**

**Sarbanes-Oxley Act** (this index)

## **WORLD TRADE ORGANIZATION**

Foreign broker-dealers, financial services agreement, exemptions, **13:116**

## **WRITTEN AFFIRMATIONS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:193**

## **WRITTEN COMMUNICATIONS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, **7:59**

## **WRITTEN INTERPRETATIONS**

Listing requirements, **3:30**

## INDEX

### **XBRL FINANCIAL REPORTING**

**Public Offerings of Equity by Foreign Issuer  
into U.S. (this index)**

### **XBRL FORMAT**

Form SD reporting, **6:23.50**